Latin
On the 28th of April 2012 the contents of the English as well as German Wikibooks and Wikipedia projects were licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported license. An URI to this license is given in the list of figures on page 287. If this document is a derived work from the contents of one of these projects and the content was still licensed by the project under this license at the time of derivation this document has to be licensed under the same, a similar or a compatible license, as stated in section 4b of the license. The list of contributors is included in chapter Contributors on page 281. The licenses GPL, LGPL and GFDL are included in chapter Licenses on page 291, since this book and/or parts of it may or may not be licensed under one or more of these licenses, and thus require inclusion of these licenses. The licenses of the figures are given in the list of figures on page 287. This PDF was generated by the \LaTeX typesetting software. The \LaTeX source code is included as an attachment (source.7z.txt) in this PDF file. To extract the source from the PDF file, we recommend the use of http://www.pdflabs.com/tools/pdftk-the-pdf-toolkit/ utility or clicking the paper clip attachment symbol on the lower left of your PDF Viewer, selecting Save Attachment. After extracting it from the PDF file you have to rename it to source.7z. To uncompress the resulting archive we recommend the use of http://www.7-zip.org/. The \LaTeX source itself was generated by a program written by Dirk Hünniger, which is freely available under an open source license from http://de.wikibooks.org/wiki/Benutzer:Dirk_Huenniger/wb2pdf. This distribution also contains a configured version of the pdflatex compiler with all necessary packages and fonts needed to compile the \LaTeX source included in this PDF file.
Contents

0.1 A Progressive Latin Grammar and Exercises .......................... 1

1 How to study a language on the Internet and in your head 3
   1.1 So do not assume that................................................. 3
   1.2 See also ........................................................................ 3

2 Special consideration: How to use a Wikibook when progress may mean inaccuracy 5

3 Grammatical Introduction to Latin 7

4 What is Latin? 9

5 Introduction to the Latin Language 11
   5.1 Simple and Compound Words ........................................ 11
   5.2 Word Parts .................................................................... 11

6 Types of Words used in Latin 13
   6.1 Nouns ........................................................................... 13
   6.2 Verbs ............................................................................. 13
   6.3 Modifiers ........................................................................ 14
   6.4 Other ............................................................................. 14
   6.5 Articles .......................................................................... 14

7 Summary 15
   7.1 Pronunciation ................................................................. 15
   7.2 Declension Tables .......................................................... 16
   7.3 Grammar Part 1: Nouns and Their Role in Sentences .......... 20
   7.4 Adjectives ....................................................................... 23
   7.5 Recapitulation .................................................................. 23
   7.6 Exercises ......................................................................... 24
   7.7 Chapter 1: Basic Sentences ............................................ 25

8 The Nominative Case 27
   8.1 The Nominative Case ...................................................... 27
   8.2 Notes on Vocabulary ...................................................... 27
   8.3 Overview of Adjectives .................................................. 28
   8.4 Adjectives in Latin ........................................................ 29
   8.5 Grammar: Pluralizing Nominatives ................................. 30
   8.6 Basic verbs ..................................................................... 30
   8.7 Further Examples .......................................................... 31
   8.8 Third Declension Nouns and Adjectives ......................... 32
28.2 Deponent verbs ........................................ 148

29 Indicative Passive Verbs .................................. 149

30 Principal Parts ............................................. 155
  30.1 Principal Parts .......................................... 155

31 The Perfect Indicative Tense ................................ 157
  31.1 Latin Perfect Active Tense .............................. 157
  31.2 Rules for Finding the Perfect Stem ..................... 158

32 The Perfect Indicative Passive Verbs ......................... 161
  32.1 Forming the Perfect Passive in Latin .................... 161
  32.2 Conjugation of Verbs in the Perfect Passive ............. 161
  32.3 Examples .............................................. 162
  32.4 Exercises .............................................. 163

33 Future and Past Perfect Indicative Tenses .................... 165
  33.1 Future perfect .......................................... 165
  33.2 Pluperfect ............................................. 165
  33.3 Examples .............................................. 166

34 Ablative Absolute and Accusative Infinitive Constructions .... 167
  34.1 Ablative Absolute ....................................... 167
  34.2 Accusative Infinitive ................................... 167

35 Chapter 3 Verse ............................................ 171
  35.1 Chapter 4: The Subjunctive Mood and Complex Sentences . . . 171

36 The Subjunctive Mood ....................................... 173
  36.1 Subjunctives ........................................... 173
  36.2 Uses of the Subjunctive .................................. 175

37 The Uses of the Subjunctive .................................. 177
  37.1 First Person Exhortations (Hortatory Subjunctive) ........... 177
  37.2 Purpose Clauses ......................................... 178
  37.3 Result Clauses .......................................... 178
  37.4 Indirect Commands ...................................... 179
  37.5 Indirect questions ...................................... 179
  37.6 Nota bene! ............................................. 179

38 The Subjunctive Imperfect ................................... 181
  38.1 Application ............................................ 181

39 The Subjunctive Passive Verbs ............................... 183
  39.1 Passive Subjunctive System ............................. 183

40 The Subjunctive Perfects .................................... 185

41 The Subjunctive Perfect Passive Verbs ........................ 187
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>42 Subjunctive Passive Verbs</strong></td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.1 Subjunctive Passive Perfect</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.2 Subjunctive Passive Pluperfect</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>43 The Gerund and Participles</strong></td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>44 Participles</strong></td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.1 Present Active Participles</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.2 Gerund</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.3 Gerundive</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>45 Exercises</strong></td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>46 Conditional Clauses</strong></td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.1 Conditional Clauses</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>47 Revision</strong></td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>48 Idioms</strong></td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>49 Translation</strong></td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>50 Chapter 4 Verse</strong></td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>51 Verse from the Gospels</strong></td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.1 A Verse From the Gospel of St. Luke</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.2 Chapter 5: Review</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>52 Revision</strong></td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>53 What is Latin?</strong></td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>54 Introduction to the Latin Language</strong></td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.1 Simple and Compound Words</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.2 Word Parts</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>55 Types of Words used in Latin</strong></td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.1 Nouns</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.2 Verbs</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.3 Modifiers</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.4 Other</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.5 Articles</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>56 Summary</strong></td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.1 Pronunciation</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.2 Declension Tables</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.3 Grammar Part 1: Nouns and Their Role in Sentences</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.4 Adjectives</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.5 Recapitulation</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.6 Exercises</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
0.1 A Progressive Latin Grammar and Exercises

Introduction to the origins and structure of Latin:
1 How to study a language on the Internet and in your head

How do you think about languages as you study them? Typically, you will consider every punctuation mark and letter, all the verbs and nouns, adverbs and adjectives, and study them in order to make connections. Ideally, you will have a teacher to point you in the right direction, and help you make those connections. But when you have no teacher, these connections are left for you to discover. They may be clear or hidden, but either way you will have to make them yourself. As you explore this Wikibook, it will require the skill of critical thinking.

You can never go wrong studying a language if you remember that exposing yourself to a language, even if you stumble in practice, is itself learning it. Looking things up too much can sometimes impede progress. Stretch your memory, read slowly, and re-read. As you will soon discover, you are about to study a language that is rich and full of meaning, an ancestor of many modern languages spoken around the world, including romance languages, like Spanish, French, Italian, Romanian, and even English.

1.1 So do not assume that...

...Latin is like any other language. Do not assume ancient Roman culture is like other cultures, however, the Romans grappled with issues that are universally dealt with.

We, the authors, endorse memorization, and after that, immersion. You must develop Latin muscles, and a willingness to write or type things out, or drill using software, or with a friend. Note the patterns after you have memorized the forms, not before. Allow yourself to be mesmerized by them. Similarly, seek out explanation only after you have memorized forms. Memorize forms, then make sentences, then use your knowledge to speak the language.

1.2 See also

- How to learn a language
- Category:Latin

---

2 Special consideration: How to use a Wikibook when progress may mean inaccuracy

The current rules for dealing with inaccuracy in this book is to simply delete what you don’t understand and to note your level of schooling and your country of origin and that you were confused in the summary box. Try to use the ”revert?” keyword.

In other words, do not tolerate inaccuracy!

Category:Latin\(^1\)

\(^1\) http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin
3 Grammatical Introduction to Latin
4 What is Latin?

*Parts of this introduction were taken from The Latin Language\(^1\) on the Wikipedia\(^2\).*

Latin was the language originally spoken in the region around the city of Rome called Latium. It gained great importance as the formal language of the Roman Empire.

All Romance languages descend from a Latin parent, and many words in English\(^3\) and other languages today are based on Latin roots. Moreover, Latin was a *lingua franca*, the learned language for scientific and political affairs in Europe, for more than one and a half thousand years, being eventually replaced by French\(^4\) in the 18th century and English by the middle of the 20th. Latin remains the formal language of the Roman Catholic Church to this day, and as such is the official national language of the Vatican.

Romance languages are not derived from Classical Latin, the language spoken by Caesar and Cicero, but rather from Vulgar Latin, the language spoken by the common people, or *vulgus*, of Rome. Classical Latin and Vulgar Latin (Romance) differ (for example) in that Romance had distinctive stress whereas Classical had distinctive length of vowels. In Italian\(^5\) and Sardo logudorese, there is distinctive length of consonants and stress, in Spanish\(^6\) only distinctive stress, and in French even stress is no longer distinctive.

Another major distinction between Classical and Romance is that modern Romance languages, excluding Romanian\(^7\), have lost their case endings (suffixes at the end of the word used in place of prepositions) in most words (some pronouns being exceptions). Romanian is still equipped with several cases (though some, notably the ablative, are no longer represented).

It is also important to note that Latin is, for the most part, an inflected language — meaning that the endings change to show how the word is being used in the sentence.

\(^1\) [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latin)


\(^3\) [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/English](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/English)


\(^7\) [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Romanian](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Romanian)
5 Introduction to the Latin Language

5.1 Simple and Compound Words

In Latin, words are either:

- **simple** (words that consist of only one part). For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eo</td>
<td>I go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fero</td>
<td>I carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>I give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **compound** (words that consist of more than one part, for example, a root word combined with a prefix). For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abeo</td>
<td>I go away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transfero</td>
<td>I carry across</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reddo</td>
<td>I give back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2 Word Parts

Inflected words (i.e., words having ending- or spelling-changes according to their grammatical functions in the sentence) have a **stem** and a **root**.

The Stem

The stem is the part of the word to which various suffixes are added. The final suffix determines either the role of the word in the sentence (for example, when a Roman slave wished to address his *dominus* (master), he used the vocative form *domine* -- equivalent to 'O master' in English) or the person involved in the action (for example, 'I dominate' may be expressed as 'domin-or', and 'they dominate' as 'domin-antur'). In these cases, *domin-* is the stem and *-us, -e, -or* and *-antur* are suffixes. The addition of such suffixes is called *inflection*. This is discussed further in the Summary\(^1\).

The Root

The root is the part of the word that carries the essential meaning. For example the stem of *agito* (I drive onward) is *agit-*, whose root is *ag* (do, drive), which is in common to words of

---

\(^1\) Chapter 56 on page 221
similar meaning: *ago* (I do, drive), *agmen* (that which is driven, such as a flock), etc. Notice the essential difference between a root and a stem. To the root 'ag' has been added a suffix '(i)to-' which denotes frequency of action (so 'agit-' means to do or drive more than once, hence "agit-o", I agitate, I keep (something) moving, I urge, I impel).

In contrast, English uses word order more than inflection to determine the function of a word within a sentence. English also uses words like pronouns (I, she, etc.) and prepositions (to, at, etc.) where Latin generally prefers inflexions. Thus 'dom-i' (noun -- "at home"), 'ag-unt' (verb -- "they do/drive").

**Primitives**

Primitives occur when both the stem and the root are the same. For example, in the word *agere* (to do, drive) both the stem and the root are the same: "ag-".

**Derivatives**

Derivatives occur when the root or stem is modified. For example, the stem *flamm-* from the noun *flamma* has the root 'flag' ("blaze"), "nosco" (I know) from the verb "noscere" has the root "gno-" ("know").

**Suffixes**

Latin attaches suffixes ("endings") to stems to turn them into words (most stems and roots cannot be used in sentences without an ending). This inflection is essential to forming Latin sentences. The various suffixes and their translations will be learned in the later lessons.
6 Types of Words used in Latin

6.1 Nouns

A noun (Latin: nomen) is 'something perceived or conceived by the mind.'

There are two kinds of nouns: Substantives and Pronouns.

1. Substantive (nomen substantivum) is a name simply denoting something perceived or conceived: psittacus - the parrot, nix - the snow, virtus - virtue.

2. Pronoun (pronomen) is a word used in place of a substantivum, usually when the substantivum is already known: ea - she, ille - that man

Nouns have changing endings on the stem (known as declension) and three incidents: number, gender and case. Number concerns whether the thing referred to is singular or plural (and the ending shows this); gender classifies a substantive as masculine, feminine or neuter (this determines how the endings of adjectives and pronouns behave) and case (where the ending must show how the noun fits in to the sentence). Adjectives and Pronouns must agree in all incidents when they refer to a substantive.

6.2 Verbs

Verbs (verba) express an action or a state of being, e.g., ago (I do), dixit (he said), venis (you come). 'Conjugation' is the term for adding inflections to verb stems to indicate person (first, second or third), number (singular or plural), tense (present, future, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect or future perfect), voice (active or passive), and mood (indicative, subjunctive or imperative).

A verb can be either finite or infinite:

1. Finite verbs (verba finita) are inflected and have a subject, e.g., I run, you run, he runs, they drive, the computer is turned on.

2. The infinite verbs (verba infinita) are not inflected and have no subject, e.g. to run, to drive, to turn on, to have drawn. Participles, which are inflected as substantives rather than as verbs, may also be considered infinite, e.g., the running boy.
6.3 Modifiers

1. Adjectives (adjectiva) are used to describe nouns. They indicate a quality perceived or conceived as inherent in, or attributed to, something denoted. E.g., *vir magnus* (the great man), *puella pulchra* (the fair girl)

2. Adverbs (adverbia) are similar to adjectives, except that they are used to qualify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs, rather than nouns. In practice, they restrict the meaning of the verb or adjective by specifying how or how much. E.g., *curro celeriter* (I run quickly), *pugnat fortiter* (he fights bravely), "vere jucundus est" (he's really nice”), "incredibile callida est” (she’s incredibly clever).

6.4 Other

Particles are uninflected words that provide extra meaning.

1. Prepositions (praepositiones) are little words which tell you how one thing (noun) is behaving in relation to another thing ("the duck was near the pond", "she went towards the wood"). In Latin, the noun that follows a preposition takes a particular ending (called a 'case'), depending on the nature of the relationship, or on the nature of the preposition itself. E.g., *ad* (by), *in* (in), *sub* (under). What all this means is that a preposition is a sort of adverb, telling you how something is done. For example, "you go" is a simple statement, but "you go in" suggests that you don't just "go", you go so as to enter something, and so you need a noun for the 'something'. In English, we might say "you go into the house". In Latin, this would be: 'in domum inis'. Notice the form 'in domum', which means "into" the house -- you're going into it, you're not yet exactly inside it (the ending -um of 'domum' is called " accusative"). When you are inside the house, what you do is 'in' the house, which is 'in domo' (the ending -o of 'domo' is called "ablative").

2. Conjunctions (coniunctiones) join together clauses and sentences. E.g., *et* (and), *atque* (as well as), *sed* (but).

3. Interjections (interiectiones) are exclamations used to express feeling or to gain attention. E.g., *o!* (oh!) *eheu!* (alas!) *ecce!* (behold!)

6.5 Articles

Latin has NO articles (words for 'the' and 'a'). When translating Latin into English, insert a 'the' or 'a' when appropriate.
7 Summary

Parts of Speech

**Inflected**
- **Substantives:** things perceived or conceived
- **Adjectives:** indicate a quality perceived or conceived as inherent of something in the substantive
- **Pronouns:** nouns used in place of substantives and adjectives
- **Verbs:** mark the beginning of an independent clause\(^1\). The verb in Latin is inflected so that we know the subject (*I learn*), and its tense (to what general or specific time the clause relates to). We call the inflection of a verb **conjugation**

**Uninflected**
- **Adverbs:** describe adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs
- **Prepositions:** help nouns define their relations to other nouns
- **Conjunctions:** Join clauses and sentences
- **Interjection:** exclamation

7.1 Pronunciation

Latin pronunciation has varied somewhat over the course of its long history, and there are some differences between Classical Latin, as spoken in the Roman Republic and Roman Empire, and Medieval or Ecclesiastical Latin, as spoken in the Middle ages and in the Catholic Church. This text focuses on the classical pronunciation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>/æ/</td>
<td>about, between ah and uh, ad is pronounced almost like <em>odd</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>/ɛ/</td>
<td>get or bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>/ɪ/</td>
<td>hit, pin, in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i (Before vowel and not accented)</td>
<td>/j/</td>
<td>Y as in yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>Sometimes used in place of the letter I when making a /j/ sound, as above</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>/ɔ/</td>
<td>on, cot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>/ʊ/</td>
<td>put, foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>/aː/</td>
<td>father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>sounds like saying the letter 'A', /æ/, hay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɪ</td>
<td>sounds like saying the letter 'E', /ɪ/, eat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔ</td>
<td>sounds like saying the letter 'O', /ɔː/, clover</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ae</td>
<td>(Diphthong) sounds like saying the letter 'I', /aɪ/, aisle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

au (Diphthong) /aʊ/, brown, how
oe (Diphthong) /ɔɪ/, oil, boy
ou (Diphthong) oo
ui (Diphthong) we
bs (At the end of word) the B sounds a P
bt (At the end of a word) the B sounds a P
ch /kʰ/, pronounced separately as in archaic, not like in church
gn /ɲɲ/, hangnail, sing now
ph up hill, never sounds an F in philosophy
th Pronounced separately as in pot hole, never like this or theater
c /k/, always hard as in cat
g /g/, always hard as in get, never soft like adage
r Rolled like in the Spanish and Italian languages
s Always voiceless as in see, never voiced as in ease
v /w/, equivalent to an English W, never sounding an English V (sounds U as a consonant), some texts will write the 'v' as a 'u' when it serves as a vowel
x Equivalent to an English Ks as in box, never like exert
(y) Rarely exists in Latin except in words borrowed from Greek
(z) Rarely exists in Latin except in words borrowed from Greek

Note that Latin, as written by the Romans, did not include macrons (the longmarks over long vowels) or the letters J and U. Macrons are used today as pronunciation guides and do not necessarily need to be written. The sound value of the letter U was filled by the letter V, which sounded either /w/ or /aʊ/ depending on context. Modern texts often preserve the V when it is making a /w/ sound and change it to a U when making a /aʊ/ sound. The letter J is sometimes used in modern times (this Wikibook not included) when the letter I is being used in diphthongs.

7.2 Declension Tables

The following tables will be both referenced and explained in all of the following sections, and hence are placed here.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular Nouns</th>
<th>Declension (Gender)</th>
<th>1st (F)</th>
<th>2nd (M/N)</th>
<th>3rd (M/F/N)</th>
<th>4th (M/N)</th>
<th>5th (F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nominative</strong></td>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>puellā</td>
<td>servus</td>
<td>rēx</td>
<td>gradus</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genitive</strong></td>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servī</td>
<td>rēgis</td>
<td>gradūs</td>
<td>rēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dative</strong></td>
<td>Indirect Object</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>rēgī</td>
<td>graduī</td>
<td>rēī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Accusative</strong></td>
<td>Object</td>
<td>puellam</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>rēgēm</td>
<td>graduīm</td>
<td>rēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ablative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>puellā</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>rēge</td>
<td>gradū</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vocative</strong></td>
<td>Direct Address</td>
<td>puellā</td>
<td>serve</td>
<td>rēx</td>
<td>gradus</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note that nouns in the 3rd declension nominative can have any ending, hence why none is given in bold.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural Nouns</th>
<th>Declension (Gender)</th>
<th>1st (F)</th>
<th>2nd (M/N)</th>
<th>3rd (M/F/N)</th>
<th>4th (M/N)</th>
<th>5th (F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>servīae</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servīae</td>
<td>servīae</td>
<td>servīae</td>
<td>servīae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>res</td>
<td>ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ</td>
<td>ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ</td>
<td>ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ</td>
<td>ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ</td>
<td>ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ ĭ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.3 Grammar Part 1: Nouns and Their Role in Sentences

Nouns in Latin are inflected, which means that endings (also known as suffixes or suffixes) are appended to the end of the stem to denote these things:

1. Number (whether the noun is singular or plural)
2. Case of the noun (role of the noun in the sentence)
3. Gender (the gender of the word - one of masculine, feminine, or neuter)

Most nouns in English can be modified to indicate number (cat versus cats), and many pronouns can be modified to indicate case (who versus whose) or gender (he versus she, his versus hers). Case is especially important in Latin as meaning cannot be determined by word order as it can be in English, but purely by word endings, or "inflection". Indeed, the words in a Latin sentence can appear in almost any order with little change in meaning. Two sentences with the word orders "Sam ate the orange" and "The orange ate Sam" could potentially mean the same thing in Latin, though the spellings of "orange" and "Sam" would have to change slightly to denote which was the subject (the one eating) and which was the object (the one being eaten).

It is important to note here that although the genders of many words make sense (for example, "puella", meaning a girl, is feminine) many are simply assigned and hold no real meaning. Luckily, as you will find, the gender can often be determined by the spelling of the word (words ending in "us" are almost always masculine, and words ending in "a" are almost always feminine). For many words, however, you will simply have to memorize their gender.

Adjectives themselves must match the number, case, and gender of the noun (be it a substantive or a pronoun) they modify. If a noun is nominative singular feminine (see case table below), then the adjective describing it must also be nominative singular feminine. If the noun is accusative plural masculine, then the adjective must be accusative plural masculine. This will be expanded on in the Adjectives section below. The advantage of this system is that adjectives do not need to be adjacent to their respective nouns, as one would be able to tell which noun they modify by which noun they appear to agree with.

7.3.1 Declension

All substantives are part of one of 5 categories, called declensions. Each declension has a set of standard suffixes that indicate case and number. Usually gender is indicated by the suffix, although there are many exceptions. Therefore, you must memorize the gender of every substantive you learn.

---

2 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Noun
4 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/suffix
5 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/stem
6 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Declension
7 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grammatical%20gender
8 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adjective
9 Chapter 56.3.2 on page 227
10 Chapter 56.4 on page 229
By familiarizing yourself with the above tables\textsuperscript{11}, you could deduce that originally the suffix indicating number, case, and gender was the same for every noun. However, as the language developed, nouns with a common stem formed declensions and sounds changed. Similar processes happen continually over time, even today.

The above tables allow you to familiarize yourself with the existence of each declension, though by no means are you expected to memorize it now. Nonetheless, you will have to memorize it as you are formally introduced to individual cases and declensions in future lessons. Because of its introductory purpose, it is considerably simplified and incomplete, and therefore should not be used as a reference in the future.

Adjectives are also classed into declensions:

1. **1st/2nd declension adjectives**...
   a) ...Use 1st declension suffixes from the substantive declension table when describing feminine nouns.
   b) ...Use 2nd declension masculine suffixes from the above table when describing masculine nouns.
   c) ...Use 2nd declension neuter suffixes (not found in the above table) when describing neuter nouns.

2. **3rd declension adjectives** behave as 'i' stem substantives unless specified. Masculine and Feminine suffixes (which are the same) will be used if describing masculine and feminine nouns, and Neuter suffixes will be used when describing neuter nouns.

Pronouns are not part of any declension, as they are all irregular, and simply have to be memorized.

### 7.3.2 Case

Cases (Latin: \textit{casus}) determine the role of the noun in the sentence in relation to other parts of the sentence.

There are six cases, Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative and Ablative. Vocative (Lesson 3) can be considered a sort of miniature case, generally not being accepted as a true one. Additionally, some nouns have a locative case, which will be covered later. As nominative and accusative are the most basic, these will be taught first (the rest will be covered in later lessons).

#### The Use of the Cases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Role in sentence</th>
<th>Example (Latin)</th>
<th>Example (English)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Subject (performs the verb)</td>
<td>\textit{Vir} lupum vult.</td>
<td>\textit{The man} wants a wolf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Description and possession</td>
<td>Lupus \textit{vir}ī est.</td>
<td>It is the \textit{man}'s wolf/It is the wolf \textit{of the man}.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{11} Chapter 56.2 on page 222
The Use of the Cases
(all words in bold are in the case specified in the first column)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Role in sentence</th>
<th>Example (Latin)</th>
<th>Example (English)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>Indirect object</td>
<td>Lupō dedit vir.</td>
<td>The man gave to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(receives the direct object)</td>
<td></td>
<td>the wolf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Direct object (receives the action of the verb)</td>
<td>Vir lupum videt.</td>
<td>The man sees the wolf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>Various (modify or limit nouns by ideas of where, when, how, etc.)</td>
<td>Ā quo datum? Ā virō.</td>
<td>By whom given? By a man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>Direct address (speaking to somebody directly)</td>
<td>Salve, Brute!</td>
<td>Hello, Brutus!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.3.3 Gender

All substantives, including inanimate objects, have a particular gender (genera), which is either masculine, feminine, or neuter.

For example, Vir, "a man," is masculine. Marītus, "a husband," is also masculine. Puella, "a girl," is feminine. Māter, "a mother," is feminine. Even inanimate objects are assigned gender, including all the moons, stars, trees, tools, and so forth. Logic will give you little help in determining what the genders of inanimate objects are, and with many nouns memorization is required. Luckily, for many nouns, the spelling of the word indicates the gender.

Certain rules may be utilized to determine the gender of an inanimate substantive. Declension is a good indication of gender, especially for 1st and 2nd declension substantives. 1st declension substantives (substantives with an -a suffix) are usually feminine and second declension nouns (substantives with an -us suffix) are usually masculine or neuter. There are a few exceptions, and they will have to be learned. 3rd declension nouns can be either masculine, feminine or neuter (thus the gender will often have to be memorized). 4th declension nouns are usually masculine, sometimes neuter while 5th declension nouns are usually feminine.

1st/2nd declension adjectives alternate the set of endings depending on the gender of noun it describes (see above: Agreement of the Gender of Nouns and the Adjective). If the adjective describes a feminine noun, the adjective must use 1st declension endings, if the adjective describes a masculine noun, the adjective must use 2nd declension masculine endings, if the adjective describes a neuter noun the adjective must use 2nd declension neuter endings.

3rd declension adjectives use the same set of endings for masculine and feminine nouns. However, a slightly different set of endings are used when describing neuter nouns.
7.4 Adjectives

As stated above, adjectives must match the gender, number, and case of the noun (be the noun a substantive, or a pronoun) they modify. However, there are many occasions where logic cannot be used to determine the gender of inanimate objects, as genders are assigned arbitrarily when the noun has no literal gender. Furthermore, the declension of the noun, often determined by the spelling, can in turn be used to determine the gender, especially for the 1st and 2nd. However, this is never the case for the third declension, as the declension itself is not primarily assigned to any gender and the spelling of the nominative ("default") stem is random, leaving you with no hints.

A noun and its adjective must also be in the same case. Otherwise, it is impossible to tell which nouns pair up to their respective adjectives in a sentence, as the words in a Latin sentence can appear in any order. See the examples below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notice how &quot;magna&quot; changes to &quot;magnae&quot; to agree with the pluralized &quot;puellae&quot;.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puella (nominative sing., fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puella magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puellae (nominative pl., fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puellae magnae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notice how &quot;magna&quot; becomes &quot;magnus&quot; to agree with the masculine word &quot;servus&quot;. Also notice that &quot;magnus&quot; changes to &quot;magnum&quot; to agree with the noun it's describing in case, though do not concern yourself with the difference between cases for the time being.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servus (nominative sing, mas.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servus magnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servum (accusative sing, mas.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servum magnum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notice that &quot;magna&quot; is feminine because &quot;arbor&quot; is feminine, despite that it does not end in &quot;a&quot; like &quot;puella&quot;. The word &quot;arbor&quot; is one of the situations where you will simply have to memorize the gender.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbor (nominative sing, fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbor magna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.5 Recapitulation

- Declensions are used to categorize nouns in groups. There are 5 declensions total.
- Each of the five declensions has a distinct set of endings which are appended to nouns of that declension.
The endings indicate the case and number when appended to the stem of a noun.
A substantive may use only the endings of the declension of which it is a part.
Each substantive has a predefined gender which almost never changes and is separate from the suffix.
Adjectives are a part of the 1st/2nd declension and 3rd declension.
Adjectives use the gender of the noun that they modify.

Therefore:

- An adjective of the 1st/2nd declension uses 1st declension endings when describing a feminine noun, a 2nd declension masculine ending when describing masculine noun, and 2nd declension neuter when describing a neuter noun.
- An adjective of the 3rd declension uses the same set of endings when describing masculine and feminine nouns and another set of endings when describing neuter nouns. (Actually, there are 3-termination, 2-termination, and 1-termination 3rd declension adjectives. If the adjective is 3-termination, e.g., acer (f. sing.), acris (m. sing.), acer (n. sing.), acres (f. pl.), acres (m. pl.), or acria (n. pl.), then use the appropriate ending; if the adjective is 2-termination, then one termination will be masculine/feminine and the other neuter; if the adjective is 1-termination, the common form is used.)

Before you proceed to the next lesson, complete the exercises below so you will be able to apply this knowledge to Latin.

7.6 Exercises

Excercise: Questions

1. What are the three genders?
2. What is the number (singular/plural) of the following English words:
   a) cow
   b) dogs
   c) genders
   d) adjective
   e) children
   f) slice
   g) mice
   h) geese
3. Describe the relationship between an adjective and the noun which it modifies.
4. How many declensions are there?
5. Determine the declension of each Latin word:
   • puella (girl)
   • ianua (door)
   • amicus (friend)
   • ludus (game)
   • casa (house)
   • rex (king)
6. What gender are 1st declension substantives mostly?
7. What genders are 2nd declension substantives mostly?
8. What grammatical features of a word that can be determined by looking at its ending?

**Solution**

1. Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter
2. What is the number (singular/plural) of the following English words:
   a) S
   b) P
   c) P
   d) S
   e) P
   f) S
   g) P
   h) P

3. The adjective takes on the case and gender (but not always the declension) of the noun it describes
4. Five
5. Determine the declension of each Latin word:
   a) 1st
   b) 1st
   c) 2nd
   d) 2nd
   e) 1st
   f) 3rd
6. Feminine
7. Masculine
8. It varies slightly from word-to-word; Declension/Case, Number, and sometimes Gender.

7.7 Chapter 1: Basic Sentences
8 The Nominative Case

8.1 The Nominative Case

The nominative case refers to the subject of the sentence. It is also one of the three cases of modern English. Every sentence must have a subject. For example:

Caesar is emperor of Rome.

Caesar is the subject of this sentence therefore Caesar is given in the nominative case.

Caesar's army entered Rome

Above is the genitive case which shows possession; the army was Caesar's army. We have changed the case of the word 'Caesar' by altering its end. The nominative case has been changed to the genitive case by the addition of an apostrophe and the letter 's'.

Latin cases are formed in the same way. The first step is to learn some words in their nominative case so as to become familiar with their endings which will later be changed to form the other cases.

8.2 Notes on Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson Vocabulary</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magn-us -a -um</td>
<td>big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bon-us -a -um</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mal-us -a -um</td>
<td>bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puell-a -ae (f.)</td>
<td>girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puer (m.)</td>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māter (f.)</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domin-a (f.)</td>
<td>mistress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domin-us (m.)</td>
<td>master</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūd-us (m.)</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triclini-um (n.)</td>
<td>dining room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>templ-um (n.)</td>
<td>temple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Lesson Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ego) sum</td>
<td>I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(tū) es</td>
<td>you (singular) are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>(he/she/it) is*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nōs) sumus</td>
<td>we are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vōs) estis</td>
<td>you (plural) are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>(they) are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambula-t, ambula-nt</td>
<td>(he/she/it is) walking, (they are) walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curri-t, curru-nt</td>
<td>(he/she/it is) running, (they are) running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn</td>
<td>An adverb placed before a verb meaning 'not' thus negating the verb.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some second declension masculine end in -r instead of -us in the nominative case — boy is *puer*, not *puer-us*. Of the nouns discussed on this page, this rule only applies to *puer*.

Of the "to be" verbs listed in the table, only *est* and *sunt* will be covered in this lesson. The table simply allows you to familiarize yourself with them, as verbs will be covered more in future lessons.

The nominative case is used for the subject of the sentence (or any noun that is the equivalent of the subject).

In this chapter, the following conventions will be used for nouns:

- *m.* = masculine
- *f.* = feminine
- *n.* = neuter

- First and second declension substantives are given with at least the nominative case. (We will add the genitive singular as time permits. It is not strictly necessary, but you should get in the habit now of declining nouns based on the genitive stem and not the nominative. This chapter is therefore slightly misleading in this regard.)
- Third, fourth, and fifth declension substantives are given with the nominative and genitive singular.

### 8.3 Overview of Adjectives

An adjective is simply any word that describes a noun, such as an object or subject in a sentence. Of course, whole phrases may be used to describe nouns, but adjectives are individual words. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The good boy walks.</td>
<td><em>Puer bonus</em> ambulat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An adjective can also be used in a sentence opposite a form of "to be." The "to be" verb simply serves as a linking verb, as "the good boy" is an incomplete sentence, but "the boy is good" is a complete sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The boy is good.</td>
<td>Puer bonus est.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As shown above, the same is true in Latin.

### 8.4 Adjectives in Latin

Like nouns, adjectives in Latin are declined. The vast majority take either the first and second declension (*antiquus* -a -um) or the third declension (*ferox, ferocis*). All such adjectives must agree with the nouns they describe in gender, number, and case, **but not necessarily declension.**

- First and second declension adjectives have three distinct genders. Feminine adjectives require the first declension, masculine the second, and neuter the second. First/second declension adjectives use all three gender suffixes: -us, -a, -um (masculine, feminine, and neuter, respectively). This is because description is not limited to a single gender. For example, being good is not a quality limited to a single gender. Boys can be good, girls can be good, and things can be good. So, since all three genders must apply, we don’t label adjectives as particularly m., f., or n..

- Third declension adjectives are given with the nominative and genitive singular. **This, however, is only true for third declension adjectives of one termination, so again this chapter is misleading in this regard.** Most third declension adjectives do not have separate masculine and feminine forms. (Neuter adjectives follow the third declension neuter pattern.)

These words will look like the adjective *antiquus* (old, ancient):

*antiquus* (masculine), *antiqua* (feminine), *antiquum* (neuter).

Third declension adjectives typically look more like *ferox, ferocis* (wild, bold). This is because the third declension has no stem assigned to the nominative singular and is a "wild card" in that regard.

Adjectives often come **after the word they describe.** (But since word order is not central to the meaning of a Latin sentence, the adjective may appear anywhere within the sentence. In poetry, for example, several words often separate an adjective from the noun it modifies.)

For example: **Nota bene:** In the following examples the -*us* ending stands for the **masculine** (m.) gender, the -*a* for the **feminine** (f.) gender, and the -*um* stands for the **neuter** (n.) gender. So *magnus* is masculine, *magna* is feminine and *magnum* is neuter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Puella bona est.</td>
<td>The girl is good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dominus bonus est.</td>
<td>The master is good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Templum magnum est.</td>
<td>The temple is big.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Nominative Case

*Bona* is an adjective describing a feminine substantive, such as *puella*.

*Bonus* is an adjective describing a masculine substantive, such as *dominus*.

### 8.5 Grammar: Pluralizing Nominatives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>First declension feminine</th>
<th>Second declension masculine</th>
<th>Second declension neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td><em>puell-a</em></td>
<td><em>lud-us</em></td>
<td><em>triclini-um</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td><em>puellae</em></td>
<td><em>ludi</em></td>
<td><em>triclini-a</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To pluralize most first and second declension nouns, replace the singular suffix with the equivalent plural suffix. All adjectives that describe the noun must be pluralized as well because adjectives must agree in case, number, and gender (but not necessarily declension). With the adjectives given, use first declension with feminine nouns and second declension with masculine nouns. In English we use the same nominative plural endings for words we have borrowed from Latin, so it may be helpful to remember we say one *vertebr-a* but two *vertebr-ae*, one *radi-us* but two *radi-i*, and one *medium* but *multi-media*.

### 8.6 Basic verbs

Verbs in Latin work quite differently than those in English. Study the following table, then view the examples below, though keep in mind that you only need to fully understand the difference between numbers for the time being.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number</strong></td>
<td>Only pluralize the noun that is being pluralized, not the adjectives that describe it or the verb that it is performing.</td>
<td>All three are pluralized. In this context, singular verbs end in &quot;-t&quot; (est, ambulat), and plural verbs end in &quot;-nt&quot; (sunt, ambulant).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tense</strong></td>
<td>The ending is sometimes changed, though the words surrounding the verb can also be used to denote tense. Consider these examples: 'he will walk, he is walking, he walks, he walked'.</td>
<td>The stem is used to denote the tense, though this will be covered in a future lesson. In this lesson, only the present tense is being taught.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Further Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The subject of the sentence is used to determine the person. If I am the subject of the sentence, then the sentence is in the first person. If you are the subject, then the second person, and so forth with the third. In this lesson, only the third person is being taught, which refers to anyone other than the speaker or the listener.</td>
<td>The stem also denotes the person, though as previously stated, only third person is being taught in this lesson.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.7.2 Example 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puella magna est.</td>
<td>The girl is big.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:** In the same way, the adjective *magnus* -a -um must agree with *puella* in gender, number, and case, so the correct form is *magna* (feminine nominative singular, a-declinatio).

8.7.3 Example 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Puer currīt.</td>
<td>The boy is running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puerī currunt.</td>
<td>The boys are running</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:** You may notice that, when pluralized, 'currīt' becomes 'currunt'. The original spelling was probably "currunt", but changed to 'currunt' over time to make it easier to say. This is true of any pluralized verbs that would otherwise be ending in "-int".

8.7.4 Example 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lūūdī magnī sunt</td>
<td>The schools are big.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:** The adjective *magnus* -a -um in this case must agree with lūūdī in gender, number, and case, so the correct form is *magnī* (masculine nominative plural).

8.8 Third Declension Nouns and Adjectives

Third declension nouns and adjectives follow a different pattern. The nominative singular stem is not defined, and as such, any letter (or letters) can serve as a third declension stem. For example, *Māter* (mother) is a third declension noun in the nominative case. When pluralized, it becomes *Mātrēs*. "-ēs" is attached to the end of a third declension noun to pluralize it, as opposed to changing the ending completely, because there is no uniform way to do so given the third declension's random nature.

You may have also noticed that that the "e" in 'Māter' was dropped when pluralized. This often happens when a stem is attached to a third declension noun of similar spelling (example, 'Pater" (father) becomes 'Patrēs")

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>māter bona est</td>
<td>The mother is good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mātrēs bonae sunt</td>
<td>The mothers are good.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Exercises

#### Latin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pater magnus est</td>
<td>The father is large.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patrēs magnī sunt</td>
<td>The fathers are large.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amīcus fortīs est</td>
<td>The friend is strong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amīcī fortēs sunt</td>
<td>The friends are strong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Third declension nouns are listed with the nominative case and the genitive case to provide the main stem, which will be covered in a few lessons. All other nouns are also listed with the genitive for standardization, but often just the genitive ending is given. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pater, patris</td>
<td>father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oratio, orationis</td>
<td>speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uxor, uxoris</td>
<td>wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canis, canis</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proelium, -ī</td>
<td>battle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oculus, -ī</td>
<td>eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amīcus, -ī</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All other types of nouns are also generally listed with the genitive.

Adjectives with a nominative ending in -is and the same stem in the nominative and in the other cases (eg. fortis) end in -e in the neuter and -ia in the neuter plural.

For example:
- dies difficilis = the difficult day
- proelium difficile = the difficult battle
- proelia difficilia = the difficult battles

#### 8.9 Exercises

**Excercise: Translation**

1. Translate the following Latin words into English.
   a) dominus bonus
   b) ludus malus
   c) puella magna
   d) triclinium est magnum
2. Translate into Latin.
   a) the good boy
   b) the large master
   c) The temple is large.
   d) The master is bad.

**Solution**
1. Translate the following Latin words into English.
   a) The good master
   b) The bad school
   c) The big girl
   d) The dining room is large

2. Translate into Latin.
   a) Puer bonus
   b) dominus magnus
   c) templum magnum est
   d) dominus malus est
9 Present indicative active construct
10 Grammatical Introduction to Verbs

This introductory section may be a bit overwhelming, but is an overall look at verbs. The majority of this section will be covered in later chapters. Nevertheless, looking over this chapter may help you to familiarize yourself with verbs.

Verbs are parts of speech which denote action. There are two main forms of verbs in Latin:

- **Principal Verbs** (the main verb which is found in every sentence. e.g.,: *vir ambulat* = the man is walking)
- **Adjectival Verbs** (also known as participles, gerunds and gerundives which describe the state of the described noun. e.g.,: *vir ambulans* = the walking man. The verb behaves as an adjective)

Every sentence must have a verb. In a sense, the principal verb is the sentence and all the nouns, adverbs and participles are only describing the scenario of the verb. Thus in Latin this constitutes a sentence:

```
est.
```

If you want to explain 'who' is or exists, you add a nominative substantive:

```
Cornēlia est.
```

We now know Cornelia 'is'. But what is she? So we add an adjective.

```
Cornēlia est bona.
```

Now we can see that Cornelia is good, but to elaborate further we can add an adverb:

```
Cornēlia vix est bona.
```

Now we know that Cornelia is 'hardly' (*vix*¹: hardly, scarcely, barely) good. Thus, in English, the shortest Latin sentence is:

You are.

in Latin:

10.1 Examples

These two examples will demonstrate the difference between an adjectival verb and a principal verb.

The resurrected Jesus appeared to his disciples.
'resurrected' is a perfect participle (Adjectival) describing Jesus, while 'appeared' is the principal verb in the sentence.

The shocked disciples see Jesus.
'shocked' is a perfect participle (Adjectival) describing the disciples, while 'see' is the principal verb in the sentence.

10.1.1 Exercises

Excercise: Answer

1. What is the difference between a principal and adjectival verb?
2. What constitutes a sentence?
3. Write a sentence in English, and Latin.
4. Conjugate the verb 'to be' in the present tense in English and Latin (I am, You are, He is etc.)

Solution

1. Principal verbs are main verb which is found in every sentence. Adjectival Verbs are participles, gerunds and gerundives which describe the state of the described noun.
2. a verb
3. Egō Sum, I am
4. Sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt

10.2 Personal Endings

Verbs in Latin are inflected to reflect the person who performs the action. English does the same to some extent in the verb to be:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>You are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>(He/she/it) is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>We are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>You (all) are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Latin, however, inflects all verbs, and is much more extensive than English, allowing writers and speakers of Latin to often drop the personal pronoun (as mentioned last lesson), as the performer of the action is understood by the formation of the verb. The Personal pronoun is only usually added for emphasis. In a way, the ending on Latin verbs are a type of pronoun.

10.2.1 Exercises

Exercise: Answer

1. What do the personal pronouns indicate?

Solution

1. Personal pronouns (ego, tu, nos, vos, etc.) add emphasis. They are usually omitted (left out) because they are understood.

   Example: [Ego] amō patrem² meum et matrem³ meam.
   I love my mother and my father. (you don’t have to write ego, it is understood)

10.3 Moods

There are several moods. Each has its own uses to convey certain ideas. The most commons moods are:

- Indicative
- Subjunctive or Conjunctive
- Imperative

The two moods we will first learn are the imperative (commands and orders) and the indicative (declarative statements and factual questions).

10.3.1 Exercises

Exercise: Answer

1. List the most common moods.
2. What two moods are we going to learn about in this lesson, and what do they let us construct?

Solution

1. Indicative, subjunctive (or conjunctive) and imperative.
2. The moods we are going to learn about first are:
   
   **Imperative**: Which we use when we make orders.
   
   Go away. Fetch me the keys. Do not order me around!

   **Indicative**: Statements which are declarative, and questions concerning facts.
10.4 Voice

There are two constructions verbs can have regarding voice.

Verbs can have either an active or passive voice.

E.g. 'I smash the car.' 'smash' is an active verb construct.

The passive is used when the nominative is affected by the verb.

E.g. 'The car is smashed by me.' 'is smashed' is a passive construct.

10.4.1 Exercises

Exercise: Translate

1. What is 'voice'?
2. What is active voice?
3. What is passive voice?
4. Construct a sentence in English using each of these voices.

Solution

1. Voice is how a verb is constructed.
2. When the subject affects the verb
3. When the nominative is affected by the verb
4. Ex.- I carried, I am being carried.

10.5 Tense

Tense in Latin comprises two parts: TIME and ASPECT. Time reflects when the action is occurring or did occur: past, present, or future. Aspect refers to the nature of the action: simple, completed, or repeated. The "completed" aspect is generally termed "perfective" and repeated aspect "imperfective."

Theoretically, a verb could have nine tenses (combinations of time and aspect). However, Latin only has six, since some possible combinations are expressed by the same verb forms. Latin tenses do not correspond exactly to English ones.

Below is a rough guide to tense in Latin.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Future Tense</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Simple Present Tense</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>&quot;I walk&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;I will walk&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;I walked&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Imperfective</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Future Tense</td>
<td>Imperfect Tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;I am walking&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;I will be walking&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;I was walking&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Perfect Tense</td>
<td>Future Perfect Tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;I have walked&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;I have walked&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;I had walked&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As is evident, some Latin tenses do "double duty." The Latin Present and Future Tenses can either express simple or progressive aspect. Particularly difficult to grasp is the Latin Perfect tense, which can either express an action completed from the point of view of the present ("I have just now finished walking"), or a simple action in past time (its "aorist" sense, from the old Indo European aorist tense, which Latin lost but is still present in Greek).

### 10.5.1 Exercises

**Excercise: Translate**

1. Copy out the above table.
2. Study the table.

**Solution** Vide (see) the table above.

### 10.6 Infinitive

The infinitive (impersonal) is the form of the verb which simply means 'to (verb)' e.g. 'to do', or 'to be', or 'to love', or 'to hate' etc. All forms which are not in the infinitive are in the finite (personalised) form.

The infinitive has a -re at the end of the stem of the verb. The infinitive of 'to be' is an exception and is 'esse'.

Dēbeō currere nunc = I ought to run now.

Esse, aut nōn esse = To be, or not to be?

### 10.6.1 Excercises

Answer these two question about the **infinitive** and **finite**.

**Excercise: Answer**

1. What is the **infinitive**? Give an example.
2. What is the **finite**? Give an example.

**Solution**

1. The **infinitive** is the verb-form that simply mean 'to (verb)'.
   
   To *sing*, to *dance*, to *drink*, to *love*.

2. Every verb which is not in the infinitive, is in the **finite**.
   
   He *smells*, we *plot*, she had *drunk*, he *pours*. 
10.7 Irregularities

Verbs which use the passive formation in an active sense are known as deponent. Verbs which don’t have a form for every tense and mood are known as defective. You will meet a few words like this soon.

10.7.1 Exercises

Excercise: Answer

1. What is a deponent verb?
2. What is an irregular verb?
3. What is a defective verb?

Solution

1. A verb which uses the passive voice in an active sense.
2. A verb that does not follow the normal rules of conjugation.
3. A verb missing forms for some tenses or moods.

10.8 Personal Pronouns

In case you do ever use a personal pronoun to emphasise the SUBJECT of the verb, you must remember that the personal pronoun must be in the nominative case and the number and person of the verb must match that of the subject. (Review Lesson 7 if unfamiliar with the terms person and subject).

10.8.1 Exercises

Excercise: Translate

1. What case should the subject (performer) of the verb be in?
2. What number should the principal verb be?
3. What person and number is ‘ego’?
4. What person and number is ‘I’?
5. What person and number is ‘we’?
6. What person and number is ‘thou’?
7. What person and number is ‘ye’?
8. What person and number is ‘vōs’?
9. What person and number is ‘nōs’?
10. What person and number is ‘tū’?
11. What person and number is ‘boy’?

Solution
1. Nominative case
2. First person, singular.
3. First person, singular.
4. First person, singular.
5. First person, plural.
7. Second person, plural.
8. Second person, plural.
10. Second person, singular.
11. Third person, singular.

10.9 Principal Parts

When one looks up a verb in the dictionary, the principal parts are given. From these principal parts you can find the correct form of the verb for every circumstance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Indicative Active 1st Person</th>
<th>Present Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect Indicative Active 1st Person</th>
<th>Supine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>amāvi</td>
<td>amātum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determines</td>
<td>Gives the imperfect stem and infinitive</td>
<td>Gives the perfect stem</td>
<td>Allows you to form adjectival forms of the verb (Participles)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether the vowel is dropped in the 1st person singular present.

10.9.1 Exercises

Answer this question about principal parts.

Excercise: Answer

1. What do the principal parts allow you to do?

Solution

1. The principal parts are the verb-forms you find when you look in the dictionary. E.g. if you look for the verb *amō* (love) in a dictionary you would find:

   amō • amāre • amāvi • amātum

These four forms will help you form every Latin verb you want.
10.10 Using the Dictionary

All nouns are given in the nominative, as well as the declension and gender of the noun. Verbs are alphabetized using the 1st person singular (the first principal part) and the infinitive is given. Supplementary principal parts are given if the various other principal parts do not follow the standard pattern of formation from the infinitive and 1st person singular.
11 Verbs: Conjugation in the Present Imperfect

The present imperfect is the simplest tense. To form the present imperfect all that is required is to place the personal endings at the end of the verb stem.

Thus, if you have the stem 'ama' (love), to make it 'I love' you place an ō at the end.

| I love = amo (amaō*) |
| we love = amīmus |

- Latin drops the 'a' in amaō forming amō.

Latin could add personal pronouns, however only for added emphasis and in conjunction with the corresponding person ending on the verb. Otherwise the sentence will not make sense. For example:

ego amō = I (not you) love
nōs amīmus = We (not you) love

but that would be for special emphasis: It's I, not you, who love.

Here are the forms of the verb 'porta', carry, in the present imperfect tense:

| porta | I carry |
| portās | thou carryest, you carry |
| portat | he, she, it carries |
| portamus | we carry |
| portatis | you (all) carry |
| portant | they carry |

First person singular  Second person singular  Third person singular  First person plural  Second person plural  Third person plural

'porto' can also be translated 'I am carrying' (present imperfect), 'I do carry' (present emphatic). 'I carry' is known as the 'present simple' tense in English. Again the 'a' gets dropped when the 'ō' is placed on porta. Porta, and ama are known as 1st conjugation verbs; in other words, verbs which have a stem ending in 'a'.

There are three other conjugations, and below are some examples of verbs from each of the four conjugations (present imperfect tense):

<p>| porta, carry (1st. Conj) | mone, warn (2nd Conj) | reges, thou rulest |
| portō, I carry | moneō, I warn | regō, I rule |
| portās, thou carry-est | monēs, thou warnest | regis, thou rulest | audio, I hear | audis, thou hear-est |
| portat | moneat | regest | audio | audest |
| portamus | moneamus | regemus | audemus | audemus |
| portatis | moneatis | regematis | audematis | audematis |
| portant | moneant | regemant | audemant | audemant |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1s Subject</th>
<th>2s Subject</th>
<th>3s Subject</th>
<th>Plural Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portat, he/she/it</td>
<td>monet, he/she/it</td>
<td>regit, he/she/it</td>
<td>audit, he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carries</td>
<td>warns</td>
<td>rules</td>
<td>hears</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portāmus, we</td>
<td>monēmus, we</td>
<td>regimus, we rule</td>
<td>audimus, we hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry</td>
<td>warn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portātis, ye carry</td>
<td>monētis, ye warn</td>
<td>regitis, ye rule</td>
<td>auditis, ye hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry</td>
<td>warn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portant, they</td>
<td>monent, they</td>
<td>regunt, they rule</td>
<td>audiunt, they hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each verb uses the same final letter or letters to indicate the 'subject' - I, thou, he/she/it, we, you, they.

Before these final letters, the first conjugation has an 'a' (although when an 'o' is placed, the 'a' is often dropped), the second an 'e', and the third and fourth usually an 'i'. The third person plural forms in the third and fourth conjugations have a 'u'. These verb forms really should be learned by heart.

The most common verb of all is irregular (see next lesson). Here is a table of the verb 'to be' in Latin, English, and four Romantic languages (French, Spanish, Italian and Portuguese)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Portuguese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>I am</td>
<td>je suis</td>
<td>yo soy</td>
<td>sono</td>
<td>eu sou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>thou art</td>
<td>tu es</td>
<td>tú eres</td>
<td>sei</td>
<td>tu és</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>he/she/it is</td>
<td>il/elle est</td>
<td>él/ella es</td>
<td>è</td>
<td>ele/ela é</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>we are</td>
<td>nous sommes</td>
<td>nosotros/-as somos</td>
<td>siamo</td>
<td>nós somos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>ye are</td>
<td>vous êtes</td>
<td>vosotros/-as sois</td>
<td>siete</td>
<td>vós sois</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>they are</td>
<td>ils/elles sont</td>
<td>ellos/-as son</td>
<td>sono</td>
<td>eles/elas são</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verbs: Conjugation in the Present Imperfect

The personal endings are the same as in the four regular conjugations.

11.0.1 Exercises

Conjugate (find how a verb is in different forms) the verb 'amō'.

**Excercise: Translate**
What form of the verb 'amō' (hint: amō is conjugated like portō in the table above) would the following words use to become the suffix:

1. ego (I)
2. tū (thou)
3. puer (the boy)
4. nōs (we)
5. vōs (ye)
6. puellae (the girls)

**Solution**

1. [ego] amō (I love)
2. [tū] amās (thou lovest pl., you love pl.)
3. puer amat (the boy loves)
4. [nos] amāmus (we love)
5. [vos] amātis (ye love pl., you love pl.)
6. puellae amant (the girls love)

11.1 Imperative Mood

The imperative mood conveys an order (e.g. Go!, Run!, Away Now!). The imperative mood is formed by simply using the stem of the verb. If the order is to a large group of people, or you are trying to show respect, you must use the -te suffix.

amō eum = I love him.

amā eum = Love him!.

amāte eum = Love (respectful, or plural) him!

currō casam = I run home.

curre casam = Run home!

currite casam = Run (respectful, or plural) home!

Regō prudente = I rule wisely.

Rege prudente = Rule wisely!

Regite prudente = Rule (respectful order) wisely!
11.1.1 Exercises

- *Translate Latin verbs:*

**Exercise:** Translate
Translate the following verbs:

1. portāmus • regunt • monēs • estis • audītis • monent • regō • portās • sunt

**Solution**

1. we carry • they rule • thou warnest • ye are • ye hear • they warn • I rule •
   you carry • they are

- *Translate sentences into Latin:*

**Exercise:** Translate
Translate Into Latin:

1. I carry my book.
2. Thou kill not.
3. They hear music.

**Solution**

1. Meum lībrum portō.
2. Interficis nōn.
3. Mūsicam audìunt.
12 Adverbs & Prepositions

12.1 Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives
(Comparatïa et superlatïa adjectïorum)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, forte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long-us, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingeniïsus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denarius, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soror, sororis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are three types of adjectives: Positive (the 'normal' adjective, eg. the brave man: fortis vir), Comparative (eg. the braver man, or the rather brave man: fortior vir) and Superlative (eg. the bravest man, or the very brave man: fortissimus vir). Comparatives and superlatives of adjectives are usually formed by appending the suffix -ior (genitive is -ioris) for comparatives and -issimus for superlatives. All comparatives are declined like third declension nouns while superlatives are declined like second declension nouns, and thus must match the gender of the noun the superlative modifies. Often stem changes occur when appending these suffixes.

Adjective: longus (long)

- longus
- long
- longior
- longer
- longissimus
- longest

12.1.1 Irregular Adjectives

Fortunately, there are only a few irregular adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irregular Adjectives</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>melior (better)</td>
<td>optimus (best)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>malus</td>
<td>peior (worse)</td>
<td>pessimus (worst)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large, great</td>
<td>magnus</td>
<td>maior</td>
<td>maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>parvus</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>multus</td>
<td>plus</td>
<td>plurimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marcus est fortior quam Publius</td>
<td>Marcus is stronger than Publius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publius ingeniosior est quam Marcus</td>
<td>Publius is more clever than Marcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marcus plures denarios habet quam Publius</td>
<td>Marcus has more denariuses¹ than Publius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publius plures sorores habet quam Marcus</td>
<td>Publius has more sisters than Marcus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹: We won't say "Marcus has more money" (pecunia) since plus in the singular takes the genitive case, which will not be covered for a few more lessons

12.2 Adverbs

Adverbs are formed usually by replacing the suffix appended to the stem with the -e, or -i and sometimes -um. Adverbs modify the verb in the clause that contains the adverb. The adverb may be placed anywhere with the clause. Adverbs may be of positive, comparative and superlative form. Unlike adjectives and substantives, adverbs do not have declension or gender. And thus they are referred to as being 'indeclinable.' Following suffices are appended to form the comparative and superlative forms of adverbs: -ius for comparatives and -issime for superlative.

12.2.1 Example

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>fortius</th>
<th>fortissime</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bravely</td>
<td>more bravely</td>
<td>most bravely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular adjectives form adverbs regularly from the adjective forms.

For example:

- melior (better) -> melius
- maximus (greatest) -> maxime

Some adverbs do not come from adjectives but rather exist on their own:

- diu (for a long time) -> diutius, diutissime
- saepe (often) -> saepius, saepissime

12.2.2 Exercise 1

**Exercise: Answer**

1. What is the comparitive adverbial form of sol-us, sol-a, sol-um (alone)?
2. What is the positive adverbial form of laetus? (happy)
3. What is the positive adjectival form of ἱστιορ? (angrier)
4. What is the postive adverbial form of certus? (certain)
5. What is the superlative adjectival form of certus?
6. What is the superlative adverbial form of certe?
7. What is the superlative adjectival form of maev?
8. What is the superlative adverbial form of malus?
9. What is the comparative adjectival form of désertus? (deserted)

Solution
1. Solius
2. Laete
3. Irátus
4. Certe
5. Certissimus
6. Certissime
7. Pessimus
8. Pessime
9. Desertior

12.3 Conjunctions

Conjunctions are indeclinable particles that join clauses together to form sentences. Examples of forms of conjunctions in English are: and, but and so. Conjunctions are either coordinating (joining two main clauses) or subordinating (joining a subclause to a main clause).

List of Common Conjunctions

Coordinating Conjunctions
atque and
aut or
aut...autˆˆ either...or
enim (usually placed second in sentence) for
ergo and so, therefore
et and
et...etˆ both...and
igitur therefore
itaque and so
nam for
nec/necque and not, nor
nec/necque...nec/necqueˆ neither...nor
-que* and
sed but
tamen (usually placed second in sentence) however

Subordinating Conjunctions
cum when
Adverbs & Prepositions

dum while, for the time
nisī unless, except
quamquam however
quod because
sī if
ubi where, when
ut as/with result clauses: in order to, so, to

12.3.1 Exercise 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>virtus, virtūtis</td>
<td>virtue, courage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in animo habeo irė</td>
<td>I have in mind, I intend to go</td>
<td>Takes an infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hodie</td>
<td>today</td>
<td>The indicative forms (I go, you go, etc) are eo, is, it, imus, itis, eunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domi</td>
<td>at home</td>
<td>hodie is an adverb, don't try to use it as a noun (&quot;Today is a good day&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambulat</td>
<td>he/she walks</td>
<td>An instance of the locative case, normally used for cities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forum, -i</td>
<td>marketplace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Based upon your reading of the table of conjunctions, how would one translate these sentences?

1. Aut tu es bonus aut tu es malus ergo dīc mihi veritātem (*tell me the truth*).
2. Cavēte canem quod nec estis fortes nec cum virtūte.
3. Puer ē forū cum canē ambulat
4. Et canis et cattus sunt laetī.
5. In animō habēō irē ad grammaticum hodiē sed habēō labōrem (*work*) domī.

12.4 Prepositions

You have met a few prepositions already. Prepositions are indeclinable and genderless. Prepositions are placed before substantives and adjectives. Most prepositions take only the accusative or ablative case. Some prepositions may take both, however their meanings differ depending on the case.

List of Common Prepositions
Prepositions Taking the Accusative Case
ad to
ante before
circum around
contra against
extra outside
in* into
inter between, among
per through
post after
prope near
propter because of
super above
trans across

Prepositions Taking The Ablative Case
a/ab** from
cum with
de about, down from
e/ex** out of
in* in
pro for, on behalf of
sine without
sub under

*notice the two different meanings of in depending on the case
** Just like a/an in English, the form with a consonant is used when the following word begins with a vowel

Ablative case forms for nouns and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative singular</th>
<th>puell-a (1st decl.)</th>
<th>domin-us (2nd decl. m.)</th>
<th>triclini-um (2nd decl. n.)</th>
<th>canis (3rd decl.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ablative singular</td>
<td>puell-ã</td>
<td>domin-o</td>
<td>tricilin-o</td>
<td>can-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative plural</td>
<td>puell-is</td>
<td>domin-is</td>
<td>triclini-is</td>
<td>can-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.4.1 Exercise 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ero</td>
<td>I will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eris</td>
<td>You will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erit</td>
<td>He/she will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erimus</td>
<td>We will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eritis</td>
<td>You will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erunt</td>
<td>They will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dives, divitis</td>
<td>wealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aedificium, -i</td>
<td>building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anima, -ae</td>
<td>mind, soul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venit</td>
<td>he/she comes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Adverbs & Prepositions

Translate the following sentences:

1. eo domum (Latin omits 'ad' with 'domus,' specific city names, and small islands; e.g. Eunt Romam = They go [to] Rome.)
2. cum bona fortuna ero dives!
3. circum agrum est aedificium cum atrio
4. tu non es vir sine animis.
5. familia venit cum amore.

12.5 List of Frequent Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions in Latin

Taken from http://www.georgetown.edu/faculty/irvinem/classics203/resources/latin.lex

- atque, ac (conj): and [also], and; atque is used before consonants, ac before vowels
- ad modum: adv. very, quite; fully; + neg. = at all
- ad huc/adhuc: thus far, as yet, still, in addition, in the future
- aliquam: in some degree
- aliqui -qua -quod: some, any
- aliquis -qua -quid: someone, something; some, any
- aliquando: at times, sometimes; once, formerly
- aliquotiens: several times, at different times
- at (form of ad = in addition to): but (intro startling transitions)
- atque: and as well, even, together with, in everything;
- atque...atque, both...and
- atqui: rather, however, but at any rate, but for all that (transition in arg.)
- aut: or, at least, or else; aut...aut: either...or
- autem: but, on the other hand, however
- coram: adv. and prep. in the presence of, before
- dehinc: adv. while, from here, from now, henceforth; then, next
- deinde: adv. from there; then, afterwards; secondly, next (in order), in the second (next) place
- demum: adv. at last, finally, not till then; precisely, exactly, just, in fact, certainly, to be sure; modo demum: only now, just now.
- denique: adv. finally
- donec: while, as long as, until
- dum: conj. while, now; so long as, provided that, if only; until
- enim: (conj) namely, indeed, certainly, in fact, for, because
- eo quod: because
- etenim: (conj) and indeed, for, as a matter of fact
- etiam: also, besides; even, actually; (time) still
- etsi: (conj.) though, although, and yet
- fas (est): indecl. (it is) right, proper
- huc: here, to this place; so far, for this purpose
- ibi: there, then, therein, on that occasion
- idcirco: for that reason, on that account, therefore
• ideo: therefore, for this reason
• illuc: (adv.) (to) there; to that; to him/her
• immo: (adv.) or rather; indeed; no, yes (emphasis)
• interdum: occasionally; sometimes, now and then
• inde: from there, from that source, then, after; from then
• iuxta: (adv) near by, alike, equally; (prep) close to, right after, near to, beside.
  • iuxta (7th-15th c.): according to
  • iuxta aliquid: to some extent
• ita: thus, so, in this way; ita...ut: just as, so...that
  • ita...quomodo: just as
• licet: all right; (with dat + inf) it is right for someone to; (conj) although, even if
• modo: only, just now
• necnon: also, moreover, certainly, besides
• nempe: to be sure, of course
• non numquam: sometimes
• nondum: not yet
• nonnullus -a -um: some, several
• nuper: recently, lately
• nusquam: nowhere
• ob: before, in front of; on account of, because of; for the sake of; instead of; in proportion to
  • ob rem: to the purpose, usefully
  • quam ob rem: wherefore, accordingly
• olim: once; of old; one day
• praeterea: besides, moreover; hereafter
• postea: afterwards
• postmodum: afterwards; presently
• procul: far off
• proinde: adv. consequently, therefore; just as
• propter: for that reason, therefore
• prorsus/prorsum: (adv.) forwards; absolutely; in short
• prout: (conj) according as
• qua: (adv) where, as far as, how; qua..qua: partly...partly
• qualibit: anywhere, any way, as you please
• quals -e: what sort of, what kind of, such as, as
• qualifier: adv. how, as, just as
• quam: (adv) how, how much; as, very
• quamdiu: as long as; while; inasmuch as
• quamquam: although
• quamvis: (adv) however; (conj) although
• quando: when (after nisi, ne) ever; (conj) when, since, because
• quandoque: (adv) at some time; (conj) whenever, as often as, since
• quantum: (adv) as much as, as far as, so much as, to what extent
• quants: how great, how much
  • in quantum: to what extent
  • quanto: for how much
• quantum ad: in terms of, as far as x is concerned, with respect to
• quapropter: wherefore
• quare: by what means, how; why, wherefore
• quasi: as if, as though
• quaternus: adv.(inter.) how far, how long? (rel.) as far as, in so far as, since
• quemadmodum: (adv) in what way, how; (conj) as, just as
• quidam: anything
• quidamque quae- quod-: whoever, whatever; all that, any whatever
• quidam quae- quid-: a certain one, someone, a kind of
• quidem: indeed, in fact
• quippe: adv. certainly, of course; conj.(explaining) for in fact, because, since
• quisquam quid-: anyone, anything
• quisque: each, each one, every
• quiquis, quidquid: whoever, whatever; all
• quo: where, what for, to what end
• quoad: as to, with respect to
• quocumque: wither so ever, how so ever
• quod: (conj) because, as far as, in so far as, as for the fact that, in that, that
  • quod si: but if
• quodamodo: in a way
• quoniam: because, since, seeing that, now that
• quoque: also, too
• quot: how many; (conj) as many
• quotiens: how often (rel) as often as
• rursus: again, in turn
• recte: rightly, correctly
• rursum: again
• sane: reasonably, sensibly; certainly, doubtless, truly; of course; c. neg. = really, at all; to be sure, however
• scilicet: adv. evidently, naturally, of course; (as explan. particle:) namely, that is to say, in other words
• semel: once
• seu: and
• simul: at the same time; together; likewise
• sin: but if
• siquidem: if in fact; if only, if indeed; since indeed, since that
• talis -e: adj. such, of such a kind, the following
• taliter: in such a manner, so
• tam: so, so greatly; tam...quam: so...as, much...as well as
• tamen: yet, nevertheless, still
• tamquam: as, just as; (conj) as if, just as if
• tandem: at last, finally
• tantum: (adv) so much, so greatly; to such a degree; so far; only
• tantus -a -um (adj): of such (a size); so great, so much
• tot: as many, so many
• tunc: (adv) then, just the; thereupon, accordingly, consequently
• ubicumque: wherever, everywhere
• unde: whence, from where; wherefore; this being the case
• usque: as far as, all the way, continually, straight on, up to; until
• ut...ita: while...nevertheless
• uterque -raque -rumque: both, each (of two)
• utinam: would that, if only
• utique: anyhow, at least, at any rate
• utpote: as, in as much as
• utrum: (conj) either, whether
• velut: as, just as, as it were, as though
• verumtamen: but yet, nevertheless
• vero (conj): but, truly
• videlicet: clearly, evidently; namely

Category:Latin

1 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin
13 The Accusative Case

13.1 Exercises

**Exercise:** Give the accusative singular.

Give the accusative singular for:

1. lud-us
2. magn-us
3. triclini-um
4. bell-um
5. puell-a
6. serv-us
7. ager

**Solution**

1. ludum
2. magnum
3. triclinium
4. bellum
5. puellam
6. servum
7. agrum

**Exercise:** Give the accusative plural.

Give the accusative plural for:

1. lud-us
2. magn-us
3. triclini-um
4. bell-um
5. puell-a
6. serv-us
7. ager

**Solution**

1. ludos
2. magnos
3. triclinia
4. bella
5. puellas
Excercise: Give the nominative singular.
Give the nominative singular for:

1. bon-ī
2. bell-a
3. tricīni-a
4. puell-am
5. agr-ōs
6. serv-ōs
7. puell-ae

Solution

1. bonus
2. bellum
3. triclinium
4. puella
5. ager
6. servus
7. puella

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson Vocabulary</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vendit</td>
<td>he/she sells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videt</td>
<td>he/she sees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>he/she loves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cist-a -ae (f.)</td>
<td>box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferox, ferocis (m/f.)</td>
<td>wild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ager (m.)</td>
<td>field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bell-um (n.)</td>
<td>war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serv-us (m.)</td>
<td>slave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.2 Grammar: The Accusative

As you learned in the last lesson, the verb 'esse' (to be) usually takes the nominative case, because then the word after it is a complement. Most other verbs take the 'accusative' case.

In a sentence, the accusative is the "what" - in English grammar, this is known as the direct object.

For example: The girl sells the box.

What did the girl sell? The box. Thus, box is the direct object, and when we translate it into Latin:
Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case

Example

*English:* The girl sells the box.

*Latin:* Puella vendit cistam.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ACCUSATIVE

Cistam, then, is in the accusative, because it is the direct object.

Again, when an adjective describes a noun in the accusative case, the adjective must agree in number, case, and gender.

Example

*English:* The girl sells the big box.

*Latin:* Puella vendit magnam cistam.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ADJECTIVE NOUN ACCUSATIVE

Because Latin uses cases to mark the subject and the object of a sentence, word order does not matter. Consider:

- puer puellam videt
- puerum puella videt
- puellam puer videt
- puella puerum videt

The boy sees the girl
The girl sees the boy
The boy sees the girl
The girl sees the boy

13.3 Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case
**Explanation** - The *good* boy loves the *wild* dog.

*Latin:* puer **bonus** amat canem (acc) **ferocem** (acc).

*English:* [The] boy **good** [he] loves [the] dog **wild**.
Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case

*Bonus*, a first and second declension adjective, is masculine, nominative, and singular to agree with *puer*, the word it is describing.

*Ferocem*, a third declension adjective, is masculine, accusative, and singular to agree with *canem*. *Canem* is accusative because it is the object of *amat*.

Here is an example of plural adjectives:
Explanation- The *good* boys love the *wild* dogs.

*Latin*: Pueri (plur) **boni** (plur) *amant* (plur) canes (plur, acc) **feroces** (plur, acc).

*English*: [The] boys **good** [they] love [the] dogs **wild**.
The words *bonus* and *ferocem* become *boni* and *feroces* to agree with the plurals *pueri* and *canes*.

However, if a girl (puella\(^1\)) happened to love that boy:

**Explanation** - The *good* girl loves the *good* boy.

*Latin:* Puella *bona* amat puerum (acc) *bonum* (acc).

*English:* [The] girl *good* [she] loves [the] boy *good*. 
Bonus must become bona in order to modify puella, which is feminine.

Finally, if the girl isn't good, but rather wild:
Explanation- The wild girl loves the good boy.

*Latin:* Puella *ferox* amat puerum (acc) *bonum* (acc).

Even though *puella* is first declension, *ferox* remains third declension. In the same way, a good lion would be *bonus leo*.

### 13.4 Exercise 3

Determine whether the adjective agrees with the substantive in all three categories: case, gender, number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Does it Agree?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. magn-us agr-ōs</td>
<td>True/False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. magn-a puella</td>
<td>True/False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. poet-a* bon-us</td>
<td>True/False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. magn-um serv-um</td>
<td>True/False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. poet-ae* magn-ae</td>
<td>True/False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. bell-a magn-a</td>
<td>True/False</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Nota bene: Poeta (meaning poet) is a masculine noun, even though it ends in *-a*.*

**Exercise: Answer**

See table above. Determine whether the adjective (magnus, bonus..) agrees with the substantives (ager, puella, poeta) in both case (nominative, accusative...), gender (masculine, female and neuter) and number (singular and plural).

**Solution**

1. **False.** *Magnus* doesn't agree with *agrōs*; in number and case.  
   *Magnus*: Masculine, singular, nominative.  
   *Agrōs*: Masculine, plural, accusative.

2. **True.** *Magna* agrees with *puella*.  
   *Magna*: Feminine, singular, nominative.  
   *Puella*: Feminine, singular, nominative.

3. **True.** *Bonus* agrees with *poeta*.  
   *Bonus*: Masculine, singular, nominative.  
   *Poeta*: Masculine, singular, nominative.

4. **True.** *Magnum* agrees with *servum*.  
   *Magnum*: Neuter, singular, nominative.  
   *Servum*: Neuter, singular, nominative.

5. **False.** *Magnae* doesn't agree with *poetae*; in gender.  
   *Magnae*: Feminine, plural, nominative.  
   *Poetae*: Masculine, plural, nominative.

6. **True.** *Bella* agrees with *magna*.  
   *Bella*: Neuter, plural, nominative.  
   *Magna*: Neuter, plural, nominative.

### 13.5 Grammar: The Use of the Accusative
The newly introduced verbs, ama-t, curri-t, and porta-t take the accusative as the 'object'. Unless specified, any verb you look up in the dictionary will take the accusative, not the nominative. This means that they are transitive verbs, verbs that happen to someone or something, e.g.:

I heal you. (acc.)
You make my day. (acc.)
She hit your arm. (acc.)

In the examples above, the bold words are the subject of the sentence clause. Because something happens 'to' them, they can't be in nominative.

13.6 Grammatical Explanation Using English Sentences

**Grammatical Explanation 1**

*English:* The boy hits the car.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ACCUSATIVE

**Grammatical Explanation 2**

*English:* The girl hugs the boy.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ACCUSATIVE

**Grammatical Explanation 3**

*English:* He who flees, deserves the guillotine.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB VERB ACCUSATIVE
13.6.1 Exercise 4: Find the Nominative and Accusative

Exercise: Find the Nominative and Accusative (if present) in each the sentence.

Find the Nominative and Accusative (if present) in each the sentence.

1. The boy is good.
2. The girl kisses the boy.
3. The boy gives the book.
4. The child watches the TV.
5. Whom it concerns.
6. To the kitchen I run
7. I eat the pizza.

Solution

1. The boy {nom} is good {nom}.
   \textit{Puer} \{nom\} \textit{est} \{nom\} \textit{bonus}.
2. The girl {nom} kisses the boy {acc}.
   \textit{Puella} \{nom\} \textit{puerum} \{acc\} \textit{basiat}.
3. The boy {nom} gives the book {acc}.
   \textit{Puer} \{nom\} \textit{librum} \{acc\} \textit{dat}.
4. The child {nom} watches the TV {acc}.
   \textit{Infans} \{nom\} \textit{telesvisorium} \{acc\} \textit{videt}.
5. Whom {acc} it {nom} concerns.
   ???
6. To the kitchen {acc} I {nom} run.
   \textit{Ad} \textit{culinam} \{acc\} \{ego} \{nom\}\text{"\textit{curro}.
7. I {nom} eat the pizza {acc}.
   \textit{Pittam} \{acc\} \{ego} \{nom\}\text{"\textit{edo}.

Exercise: In the following sentences, identify the accusative and nominative. Then translate.

In the following sentences, identify the accusative and nominative. Then translate.

1. Puer est bonus.
2. Puella puerum amat.
3. Puer cistam portat.
4. Filius virum spectat.
5. Ad culinam currit.

Solution

1. The boy \{nom\} is good \{nom\}.
   \textit{Puer} \{nom\} \textit{est} \{nom\} \textit{bonus}.
2. The girl \{nom\} loves the boy \{acc\}.
   \textit{Puella} \{nom\} \textit{puerum} \{acc\} \textit{amat}.
3. The boy \{nom\} carries the box \{acc\}.
   \textit{Puer} \{nom\} \textit{cistam} \{acc\} \textit{portat}.
4. Filius (nom) virum (acc) spectat.
   The son (nom) watched the husband (acc).
5. Ad culmam (acc) currit.
   To the kitchen (acc) [he (nom)] runs.

Category:Latin²
14 Pronouns

14.1 Personal Pronouns in English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laborat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronouns are nouns which are used instead of another noun ("pro", in place of "noun", noun.) There are three categories of pronouns which are divided up into persons: 1st, 2nd, and 3rd. In addition, pronouns can be singular or plural. They are declined like all other nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>We</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>You, Thou</td>
<td>You (all)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2 Personal Pronouns in Latin

14.2.1 1st/2nd Person Pronouns

Table of Personal Pronouns in all of their cases: I, thou, we, ye

Note: Thou is the archaic singular of the archaic plural ye - useful for distinguishing you (singular) from you (plural)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1st Person</td>
<td>2nd Person</td>
<td>1st Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nomi-native</td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>tū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>meī</td>
<td>of me</td>
<td>tuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>mīhi</td>
<td>to me</td>
<td>tībi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>tē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>from me</td>
<td>tē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nota Bene: the genitive is used in certain phrases like:

1. memor nostrī, mindful of us
2. paucī vestrum, a few of you.

For the possessive uses (my sister, your bicycle), Latin does not use the genitive, but the possessive adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meus, mea, meum</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuus, tua, tuum</td>
<td>thy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suus, sua, sum</td>
<td>his/hers, its, their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noster, nostra, nostrum</td>
<td>our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vester, vestra, vestrum</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pater noster</td>
<td>Our father</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2.2 3rd Person Pronouns

Technically, 3rd person pronouns do not exist in Latin as they do in English. However, they do have equivalents.

Adjectives modify nouns and take the gender of the noun which they modify. However, adjectives do not necessarily need a substantive present in the sentence to modify. The substantive can be presumed. In this way, '3rd person' pronouns are formed.

Example 1

Take the masculine form of the adjective 'ille'. Literally it means 'That (masculine) thing.' However one could take it for simply meaning 'he', depending on the context. Similarly, the pronoun 'iste' means 'this (masc.) thing'. Iste and ille are declined in exactly the same way.

If no substantive is provided assume words like these: 'man', 'woman', 'thing', 'idea', 'concept', 'reason' etc. Let context be your guide.

14.2.3 Common Adjectives Used as 3rd Person Pronouns In Latin

Declension of Ille (that)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declension of <em>ille</em> (that): Singular</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th></th>
<th>English</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>illūs</td>
<td>illūs</td>
<td>illūs</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>her, hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>to him</td>
<td>to her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>by, with, from him</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Declension of *ille* (that): Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nominative</strong></td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illae</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>they, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genitive</strong></td>
<td>illorum</td>
<td>illārum</td>
<td>illorum</td>
<td>their, theirs, of those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dative</strong></td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>to them, to those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Accusative</strong></td>
<td>illōs</td>
<td>illās</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>them, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ablative</strong></td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>by, with, from them, those</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ille is often used as a kind of pronoun. In situations with multiple phrases or sentences, however, it is syntactically different from is, ea, id (see below).

For example: "Canis puero cibum dat. Is laborat in agro." means "The dog gives food to the boy. The dog works in the field".

However: "Canis puero cibum dat. Ille laborat in agro." means "The dog gives food to the boy. The boy works in the field".

Thus, ille, unlike the other pronouns makes a previous object into the subject (and vice versa).

**Examples of the Usage of Ille:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Latin</strong></th>
<th><strong>English</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ille est dominus.</td>
<td>He is the master. (ille as pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ille dominus est malus.</td>
<td>That master is bad. (ille as adjective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illam videt</td>
<td>He sees her. (or 'she sees her' - illam as pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illam puellam videt</td>
<td>He (or she) sees that girl (illam as adjective).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Declension of Is, ea, id:** (personal pronouns w/ translations)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>to him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>they, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>their, theirs, of those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eārum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>eīs, īs</td>
<td>to them, to those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>them, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>eīs, īs</td>
<td>by, with, from them, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Like ille, is can be used as a form of a pronoun.

**Examples of the Usage of Is**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is est dominus.</td>
<td>He is the master. ('is' as pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is dominus est malus.</td>
<td>That master is bad. ('is' as adjective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eam videt.</td>
<td>He sees her. (or 'she sees her', 'eam' as pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eam puellam videt.</td>
<td>He (or she) sees that girl. ('eam' as adjective)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Declension of the Relative pronoun qui, quae, quod: (meaning who, which, he)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>cuīus</td>
<td></td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>whose</td>
<td></td>
<td>of which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td></td>
<td>to whom</td>
<td></td>
<td>to which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>whom</td>
<td></td>
<td>which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>by, with, from whom, which</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>quorum</td>
<td>quorum</td>
<td>quorum</td>
<td>whose</td>
<td>of which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to whom</td>
<td>to which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>quós</td>
<td>quās</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>whom</td>
<td>which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by, with, from whom, which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pronouns

Notice that the same forms are used to ask a question, with the following exceptions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
<td>who, which, what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Uses of the Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun takes on the case depending on the function it serves in the relative clause. For example, in the sentence "He sees the man who has a slave," "who" is translated as nominative because it is the subject of the clause "who has a slave." The antecedent (noun to which the pronoun refers) is usually before the relative clause.

Examples of the Usage of the Relative Pronoun

1. *Virum videt*¹ (he/she sees) *qui servum² (servant) habet³ (he/she has).*
   
   He sees the man who has a slave
2. *Ille est vir⁴ cuius servus est malus⁵.*
   
   That’s the man whose slave is bad.
3. *Quis eum⁶ videt?*
   
   Who sees him?

Declension of hic, haec, hoc (meaning this)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Femine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Femine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B. Hic as an adverb that means 'here’. N.B. Hic can also be used as a pronoun.

**Example of the Usage of Hic**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hic servus, non ille, est malus.</td>
<td>This slave, not that one, is bad.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 14.3 Exercises

Give a suitable LATIN translation for the following:

1. To him
2. To her
3. For her
4. For him
5. To it
6. I
7. You
8. Ye
9. of You
10. of him
11. We
12. Thou
13. of thee
14. in him
15. in her

Give a suitable ENGLISH translation for the following:

1. Meus
2. Me
3. Ille
4. Illud
5. Huic
6. Hī
7. Hoc
8. Nōs
9. Nostrī
10. Vōs
11. Vestrum

Category:Latin

---

7 [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin)
15 Chapter 1 Verse
16 Latin I prose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fulgeo, -ere</td>
<td>to shine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aperio, -ire</td>
<td>to open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dormio, -ire</td>
<td>to sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habeo, -ere</td>
<td>to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semper</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempto, -are</td>
<td>to try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dico, -ere</td>
<td>to speak, say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>femina</td>
<td>woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facio, -ere</td>
<td>to make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ecce!</td>
<td>look!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velle:</td>
<td>to wish, want:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volo</td>
<td>I want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>you want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult</td>
<td>he/she wants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>we want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>you want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>they want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turba</td>
<td>crowd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attonitus</td>
<td>astonished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tantus, -a, -um</td>
<td>so great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>susurro, -are</td>
<td>to whisper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patefacio, -ere</td>
<td>to open, disclose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rideo, -ere</td>
<td>to laugh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is a nice easy short story for the Latin novice:

16.0.1 Lucius ad forum it


Lucius ad forum ambulat. Multos Romanos videt. Unus Romanorum ad cives orationem facit. Est Claudius!

'Amicus meus, Lucius' dicit, 'hominem necavit.'

Lucius anxius respondet, 'Quid dicis, amice?'

Claudius est attonitus. Dicit, 'Te non video, mi Luci...'

Lucius respondet, 'hominem non necavi! Cur tanta dicis?' Claudius sussurat, 'Volo videri fortissimus, amice. Feminae te amant. Me dolet.'

Lucius omnia turbae patefacit.

Multae feminae ad Claudium misserimum rident. Mox, etiam Claudius ad se ridet.

- A Necavit is the perfect form of necare, meaning 'he killed.' For more, check out the next chapter.
- B Videri means "to appear," (or more literally, "to be seen") and is the passive infinitive of video. There is more on that in chapters 2-4.
- C Me dolet means 'makes me suffer'.
- D Omnia means 'everything'.
- E Turbae is the dative case of "turba", meaning "to the crowd".

16.1 Chapter 2: Complicated Sentences
The imperfect is a construct like: I was seeing. In Latin it would look like this: Videbam.

English has a similar construct called progressive past. Actions seem incomplete, and so the imperfect label. For example, 'I was running,' 'We were sailing,' 'They were calling.' Note that 'to be' is always there. Latin, however, would sometimes use imperfect like simple past; accordingly, 'We were sailing' could be translated as 'We sailed.' Other translations of imperfect can be used to/kept such as 'We used to sail/We kept sailing.'

Regardless of language, the concept of an imperfect is important. Imperfect is called imperfect for a reason - in Latin, the verb "perficere" means to finish/complete, which is what perfect is from. Thus, imperfect, in the grammatical sense, means not finished - that the action could be or could not be completed. Perfect instead means it has been finished - I saw. You have already seen, and it is now completed. I was seeing implies that the action is not yet completed.

The perfect tense, which we will learn later, is a more immediate reference to the past. The name, imperfect, helps you remember its use: in situations where you can't say when an event started or ended or happened, you must use the imperfect.

In situations where you can know when an event started or ended or happened, use the perfect.

You conjugate the imperfect tense this way: verb + ba + personal ending

The endings for imperfect are:

Sg. 1. -bam 2. -bas 3. -bat
Pl. 1. -bamus 2. -batis 3. -bant

Note that the only thing we add are ba + the personal endings (the same as in the present tense) to the infinitive stem. This gives us the imperfect conjugation.

Note that in third and fourth conjugations, you will have to form it differently. There is *no* rule to explain this, it just is, although there are memorization techniques that can help.

venire is 4th conjugation and is formed like: veniebam veniebas veniebat veniebamus veniebatis veniebant

For third conjugation, an example used in some textbooks/study guides is: capere (to capture or seize)

capiebam capiebas capiebat capiebamus capiebatis capiebant

Note that it is easiest to think of what the endings -ere and ire lack. The imperfect -ba + the personal ending, which we can call the imperfect conjugation, must be prefixed by ie.
Lesson Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amo, amare</td>
<td>to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneo, monere</td>
<td>to warn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vinco, vincere</td>
<td>to win, defeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capio, capere</td>
<td>to capture, seize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pello, pellere</td>
<td>to drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedeo, sedere</td>
<td>to sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lego, legere</td>
<td>to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adsum, adesse</td>
<td>to be present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emo, emere</td>
<td>to buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tristis, triste</td>
<td>sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redeo, redire</td>
<td>to return, go back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cena, -ae</td>
<td>dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paratus, -a, -um</td>
<td>ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mater, matris</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paro, parare</td>
<td>to prepare</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few examples:

amabam - I was loving (A-conjugation--1st) monebatis - You were warning [object/personage] (of something negative) (Pl.) (2nd Conjugation) vinciebamus - We were defeating (long I-conjugation--3rd conjugation) capiebant - They were catching (short I-conjugation--3rd conjugation) pellebat - She/he/it was propelling (drive something (not a vehicle), propel something) (consonantic conjugation)

(Wiki-reading tips: See discussion. Some of the above may be unclear, however the clarifying ‘-‘ and ‘’ indicate verification. We may not know what the original author intended, but we know what conjugations the examples are.)
Conjugation in the Imperfect tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive:</th>
<th>1st person:</th>
<th>2nd person:</th>
<th>3rd person:</th>
<th>mixed person:</th>
<th>4th person:</th>
<th>Irregular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amare</td>
<td>sede</td>
<td>legere</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>venire</td>
<td>ire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>amabam</td>
<td>sedebam</td>
<td>legebam</td>
<td>capiebam</td>
<td>ve-niebam</td>
<td>ibam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st person:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>volebam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person:</td>
<td>amabas</td>
<td>sedebas</td>
<td>legebas</td>
<td>capiebas</td>
<td>ve-niebas</td>
<td>ibas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>volebas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person:</td>
<td>amabat</td>
<td>sedebat</td>
<td>legebat</td>
<td>capiebat</td>
<td>veniebat</td>
<td>ibat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>volebat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>amabamus</td>
<td>sedebamus</td>
<td>legebamus</td>
<td>capiebamus</td>
<td>venedebiam</td>
<td>ibamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>volebamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st person:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eramus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person:</td>
<td>amabatis</td>
<td>sedebatis</td>
<td>legebatis</td>
<td>capiebatis</td>
<td>venedebatis</td>
<td>ibatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>volebatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person:</td>
<td>amabant</td>
<td>sedebant</td>
<td>legebant</td>
<td>capiebant</td>
<td>venedebant</td>
<td>ibant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>volebant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.1.1 Exercises

Translate from Latin to English

1. dum sol fulgebatur, puer ambulabat ad forum

2. in foro multus cibus aderat et femina cibum vendebat

3. puer cibum emere volebat sed satis pecuniae (enough money) non habebat

4. puer se vertit (turned (lit. himself) around) et tristis domum rediebat

5. sed ubi domum rediit (returned) cena parata erat quod mater semper cenam parat
18  The Genitive and Dative Cases

18.1  Noun Tables
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>1st declension</th>
<th>2nd declension</th>
<th>-um (neuter)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-us/er</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>puell-a</td>
<td>serv-us/puer</td>
<td>bell-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>puell-ae</td>
<td>serv-ī</td>
<td>bell-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>puell-ae</td>
<td>serv-ō ō ō rum</td>
<td>bell-ō ō ō rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>puell-am</td>
<td>serv-um serv-ō</td>
<td>bell-um bell-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>puell-ae</td>
<td>serv-ō serv-ī</td>
<td>bell-ō serv-ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Genitive and Dative Cases
18.2 The Genitive

The genitive case is a descriptive case. The genitive case describes the following features of the described noun:

- Possession e.g. The Dog of Marcus or Marcus’s Dog (Canis Marcī)
- Origin e.g. Marcus of Rome (Marcus Romae)
- Relation e.g. A thing of beauty (Rēs pulchrae)
- Quantity e.g. A gallon of water
- Quality e.g. Day of wrath (Dīēs irae)

Quite simply, a word in the genitive case is translated with the preposition "of". Note that Latin does not have a separate form for the possessive genitive (Marcus’s Dog vs The Dog of Marcus), as does English. A word in the genitive case showing possession can be translated either way.

18.2.1 Latin Examples
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>canis</td>
<td>The dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerī mali</td>
<td>of the bad boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canis puerorum malorum est bonus</td>
<td>The dog of the bad boys is good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part of Speech**
- Latin: canis (nominative noun), puerorum (genitive noun, plural), malorum (genitive noun, plural), est (verb), bonus (nominative adj.),
- English: The dog (nominative noun), of the bad boys (genitive noun), is (verb), good (nominative adj.).
18.2.2 Exercise 1

Indicate the word in the genitive:

1. Flavia's dog is good.
2. The man has his mother's good taste.
3. Māter Flaviae est domina.
4. The sword of justice is swift.

18.3 Agreeing with the Adjectives

When adjectives are used to describe nouns in the genitive case, they must have the same case, number, and gender as the noun to which it refers.

18.3.1 Example

A road of beautiful Rome → Via Romae pulchrae.

If we look at the bare necessities, namely nouns, in this phrase, then we get 'road of Rome,' which is translated as 'via Romae.' Now, let's look at the adjective: beautiful (pulchra). Its antecedent (the noun it modifies) is Rome. Since Rome is in the genitive case, pulchra also needs to be in the genitive case. Both are already feminine, so we don't need to change that.

To make pulchra in the genitive singular case, we replace the final '-a' with a '-ae,' and we get pulchrae.

It's that simple.

18.4 The Dative

The dative case, also known as the indirect object case indicates:

- For whom, e.g., I made this car for him.
- To whom, e.g., I gave this car to him.

Latin does not distinguish between 'to' or 'for,' though this is sometimes the case in English:

- I made this car for him. ↔ I made him this car.
- I gave this car to him. ↔ I gave him this car.

18.4.1 Example 1

He
nominative noun
made
verb
the desk
accusative
for
dative prep.
his friend
dative
'For' is the preposition indicating a dative. 'For' can be used in some other constructs. To determine whether it is dative, analyse the meaning of the sentence (see Example 3). Practice will enable you to quickly spot the case of a noun in the sentence without much effort.

18.4.2 Example 2

_He gave the book to John; He gave to John the book; or He gave John the book._

This demonstrates how English can use prepositions to change word order and even 'presume' a certain preposition exists that has been left out, giving a dative construct.

18.4.3 Latin Examples
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Donō</td>
<td>I gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb</td>
<td>my friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amīcō meō&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>donum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative noun/adj. pair</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb</td>
<td>dative noun/adj. pair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Note how the word "meus" become "meo" in order to agree with "amico".
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feret</td>
<td>He brought</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the pronouns have a dative case as well, which can be reviewed in the chapter on pronouns.

2 Note that the pronouns have a dative case as well, which can be reviewed in the chapter on pronouns.
18.5 Exercise 2: Translate into English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dō, dāre</td>
<td>to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reddō, reddēre</td>
<td>to give back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, libri (m.)</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amīcus, -ī (m.)</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribō, scriēre</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>epistula, -ae (f.)</td>
<td>letter, message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperator, Imperatoris (m.)</td>
<td>Emperor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>placebo, -ere (+dat.)</td>
<td>to please, be pleasing to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that *placeo* requires the dative case, as opposed to the accusative case. Verbs such as this are denoted with (+dat.) or similar abbreviations.

**Exercise: Questions**

1. Do librum amico.
2. Amicus meum librum legit et mihi librum reddit.
4. Meae epistulae Imperatori placent.

**Solution**

1. I give the book to a friend
2. The friend read my book and returned the book to me.
3. I am writing letters to the Emperor.
4. My letters are pleasing to the Emperor.

18.6 Roman Numerals

The Romans did not use the Hindu-Arabic numerals we use today. They used their own symbols and own numeric system. We still use Roman Numerals today.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman Numeral</th>
<th>Latin Number</th>
<th>English Number</th>
<th>Hindu-Arabic Numeral</th>
<th>Spanish Number</th>
<th>French Number</th>
<th>Italian Number</th>
<th>Portuguese Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>unus -a unum</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>uno</td>
<td>un</td>
<td>uno</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>duo -ae</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>dos</td>
<td>deux</td>
<td>due</td>
<td>dois</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>tres, tria</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>trois</td>
<td>tre</td>
<td>tres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>quattor</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>cuatro</td>
<td>quatre</td>
<td>quattro</td>
<td>quatro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>quinque</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>cinco</td>
<td>cinq</td>
<td>cinque</td>
<td>cinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>seis</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>sei</td>
<td>seis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>septem</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>siete</td>
<td>sept</td>
<td>sette</td>
<td>sete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>octō</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ocho</td>
<td>huit</td>
<td>otto</td>
<td>oito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX</td>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>nueve</td>
<td>neuf</td>
<td>nove</td>
<td>nove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>diez</td>
<td>dix</td>
<td>dieci</td>
<td>dez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>quince</td>
<td>quinze</td>
<td>quindici</td>
<td>quinze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX</td>
<td>viginti</td>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>veinte</td>
<td>vingt</td>
<td>venti</td>
<td>vinte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXV</td>
<td>viginti</td>
<td>twenty-five</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>veinticinco</td>
<td>vingt-cinq</td>
<td>venticinque</td>
<td>vinte e cinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>quinquaginta</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>cincuenta</td>
<td>cinquante</td>
<td>cinquanta</td>
<td>cinqüenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>cien</td>
<td>cent</td>
<td>cento</td>
<td>cem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>quingenti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>five hundred</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>quinientos</td>
<td>cinq cents</td>
<td>cinque cento</td>
<td>quinhentos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>mil</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note the declensions of the first three numbers. *Nullus* is the Latin equivalent of zero, for example: *nullam puellam in agro video* means *I see no girl in the field.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nullus</td>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>nullius</td>
<td>nulli</td>
<td>nullo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nulla</td>
<td>nullam</td>
<td>nullius</td>
<td>nulli</td>
<td>nulla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>nullius</td>
<td>nulli</td>
<td>nullo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unus</td>
<td>unum</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>uno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>una</td>
<td>unam</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>una</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unum</td>
<td>unum</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>uno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duos</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duas</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tria</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18.6.1 Exercise 3

Write the word form of the numbers in the following sentences in the correct case.

1. III homines me salutant
2. magistro II libros reddo
3. D senatoribus multa (*many things*) dico
4. III horas diligenter laboro

Category:Latin\(^3\)

\(^3\) [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin)
19 The Future Tense

UNKnown TEMPLATE latin

19.1 Future I, Active

Future active is a tense which, unsurprisingly, refers to something which has not yet happened. The endings are fairly basic, and follow fairly regular rules - however, the future endings used in 1st and 2nd conjugation differ from the endings of 3rd, 3rd-io (not a typo!), and 4th. For example - 'amo, amare' (1st conjugation) would be

Ama bo - I will love
* Ama bis - You will love

Ama bit - He/She/It will love

Ama bimus - We will love

Ama bitis - Y'all will love

Ama bunt - They will love
*

- 1st person singular and 3rd person plural use bo and bunt, not bi.

Note the B and the BIs - the distinguishing feature of future tense in Latin.

With 'venio, venire' (4th conjugation--io), however, the endings are different. In future, this is what they look like:

Veni am - I will come

Veni es - You will come

Veni et - He/She/It will come

Veni emus - We will come
The Future Tense

Veni etis - Y'all will come

Veni ent - They will come

[deleted paragraphs go here. deleted to maintain rigorous accuracy, which we will go back to striving for.)

To clarify: venire, venio.. we know it is 4th conjugation verb and if we look at its first person singular conjugation, we see that it is an io verb, because the conjugation of the first person singular is 'venio'. (an io category exists within 3rd and fourth conjugations and is a more general concept which we will briefly introduce here by using venire, venio as an example).

Let's first identify what we know.

We know it is 4th conjugation -io because it ends in ire, which tells us that it is 4th conjugation, and io because its nominative singular ends in io (venio). Because it is io, we leave the i in. So, when we are asked (as all textbooks should phrase these new questions):

1. What are the steps to form the future 2nd person conjugation?

We say:

1. It is better to know more than you need: check the infinitive nominative singular, we now know that it is 4th conjugation io. 2. We now know that we can form the stem: the stem is veni and can then add a personal ending--leaving in the i. We leave in the i because it is io. Because it looks weird, we never leave the i in the future perfect.

What is the form for venire, in the future tense, in the 2nd person?

The answer is venies.
### Conjugation in the Future tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st person</th>
<th>2nd person</th>
<th>3rd person</th>
<th>Mixed</th>
<th>4th</th>
<th>Irregular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amare</td>
<td>amabo</td>
<td>amabis</td>
<td>amabit</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>ire</td>
<td>velle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedere</td>
<td>sedebo</td>
<td>sedebis</td>
<td>sedebit</td>
<td>venire</td>
<td>vam</td>
<td>esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legere</td>
<td>legam</td>
<td>leges</td>
<td>leget</td>
<td>capiem</td>
<td>ibi</td>
<td>eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ibit</td>
<td>volet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venire</td>
<td>veniam</td>
<td>venies</td>
<td>veniet</td>
<td></td>
<td>ibim</td>
<td>volemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ire</td>
<td>ibo</td>
<td>ibis</td>
<td>ibit</td>
<td></td>
<td>vole</td>
<td>erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velle</td>
<td>volam</td>
<td>voles</td>
<td>volet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>critis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>ero</td>
<td>eris</td>
<td>erit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20 The Ablative and Vocative Case

20.1 The Ablative Case

The ablative case in Latin has 4 main uses:

1. With certain prepositions, eg. in, cum, sub
2. Instrumental ablative, expressing the equivalent of English "by", "with" or "using"
3. Locative Ablative, using the ablative by itself to mean "in", locating an action in space or time
4. Ablative of separation or origin, expressing the equivalent of English 'from'

The different uses of the ablative will be dealt progressively. For a summary of all forms of the ablative, please consult the Appendix.

20.2 Grammar Part 5: The Power of the Ablative Case

Ablative generally indicates position in time and/or space (i.e. when and where). It can also indicate the idea of ways of getting to a location, abstractly or concretely.

20.2.1 Ablative of Means

Exercise

How would you translate "I made the toga by hand"?

• **Hint:** You would not (and should not) use the genitive. The case you are studying right now can be used by itself for this goal.

• **Hint:** Remember that you won't need to use the pronoun "I," since Latin is based not on word order, but on the endings!

• **Glossary:**
  "to make" - Facio ('I make'), facere ('to make'), feci ('I made'), factus ('made')
  "toga" - Toga, togae feminine
  "hand" - Manus, manus feminine (This is fourth declension)

Answer

Answer: Togam manu feci.

In this case, the word "manu" is in the ablative (see fourth declension list) and thus means "by hand."
Exercise

I have my wisdom by means of my teacher.

- 'Glossary:
  - 'wisdom' - Sapientia, sapientiae feminine
  - 'to have' - Habeo ('I have'), habere ('to have'), habui ('I had'), habitus ('had')
  - 'teacher' - Magister, magistri masculine (This is a second declension word, despite the 'r' at the end, like puer.)

Answer

Answer: Habeo sapientiam magistro.

20.2.2 Ablative of Time

How would you say: I will arrive at the 5th hour.

'at the 5th hour' is indicating position of time. Thus, it can be put into the ablative case, giving:

adveniam quinta hora

In general, therefore, in order to say 'In the morning', "At nine O'clock,' or 'In the tenth year," use ablative. It is generally used to refer to a specific time in which something has, does, or will occur.

Example: I will leave in the night.

Hint: Future tense can be looked up in the appendices of this Wikibook!

Hint: to leave- discedo, discedere; night- nox, noctis (This is a third declension word!)

Answer

Answer: Discedam nocte.

Note the simplicity in which Latin translates the six words into simply two. The ending based language completely negates the need for the words 'I,' 'will,' 'in,' and 'the.'

20.2.3 Ablative of Place

Naves navigabant mari. The ships were sailing on the sea.

The ablative is also useful for showing the location of things, in general where you would use the words on, in, or at. There is an exception for the slightly more archaic locative, which is used with the words domi (from domus, domus, f., home), ruri (from rus, ruris, n., country [as opposed to city]), and Romae (from Roma, Romae, f., Rome), as well as with the names of towns, cities and small islands.
Latin has its own way of handling prepositions depending on the nouns and their cases in the sentence, including the versatile *in*, which can take many different meanings depending upon the case of the object.

### 20.3 Ablative with prepositions

Here are a few prepositions that can take the ablative (for a fuller list, see the lesson on adverbs and prepositions in the previous chapter):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>in</em>¹</td>
<td>in, on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>a/ab</em></td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>de</em></td>
<td>down from, concerning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>e/ex</em></td>
<td>out of, out from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cum</em></td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sine</em></td>
<td>without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pro</em></td>
<td>on behalf of, in front of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>super</em>²</td>
<td>upon, above, beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sub</em>³</td>
<td>under, beneath</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As a general rule, when motion is implied, use the accusative, but when location is implied.

#### 20.3.1 Example 3

Servus *ex agris venit.*

'The slave came from the fields.'

Note: *Ager* (*ager, agri, m.*, field) must take an ablative suffix to match the preceding preposition, in this case *e/ex.*

Incidentally, both *ager* and *campus* mean "field," but *ager,* like its English derivative "agriculture," connotes a farming field, while *campus* (think 'camping' or 'college campus') means 'open field.' The *Campus Martius* was a large field in Rome used for military training.

### 20.4 The Vocative Case

While you will rarely need to ask Lupus where the bathroom is in Latin, you may find yourself reading either quotes or letters in which a person is being directly addressed. The case it will be in is the vocative.

For example, "Hail, Augustus' will appear in Latin as *Ave Auguste,* and not *Ave Augustus.*

---

¹ Means 'into' or 'against' when used with the accusative
² Has static meaning when used with the ablative but connotes motion when used with the accusative
³ Usually means 'up to' or 'up to the foot of' when used with the accusative
The Ablative and Vocative Case

Each declension has its own form of the vocative singular and plural. They are listed in the table below.

Furthermore, in all but the second declension, the nominative and vocative are exactly the same!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second*</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
<th>Fifth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>us-&gt;e, ius-&gt;i, r-&gt;r</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural**</td>
<td>ae</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• In the second declension singular, there are three separate possibilities for the vocative, depending on its nominative ending. Hence, if it is a us word, it will become an e and so forth.

Examples for different declensions in the second declension

• -us:
  Lupus -> Lupe (given name, wolf)
• -ius:
  Filius -> Fili (son)
  Horatius -> Horati (given name)
• -r:
  Puer -> Puer (boy)

In all cases, the plural vocative is exactly the same as the plural nominative. This extends to those words which are neuter, which always have an 'a' for the nominative and vocative.

Examples

1. Hello, Sextus. (Hello = Salve)*
   Salve, Sexte.
2. Speak, girl! (Speak = dico, dicere, dixi)*
   Dic, puella.
3. Knee, run!* (Knee = genu; run = curro, currere, cucurri)*
   Genu, curre!
4. Oh, heart, why do you lead me? (Oh-o; heart - cor, cordis-f.; lead - duco, ducere;
   O, cor! Cur ducis tu me?

• Note that the first three also require use of the imperative. The imperative is used when ordering or telling someone what to do, e.g. "Stop," or "Get away from me."

The basic form of the imperative is created by dropping the 're' off of the infinitive form of the verb, as in: Amare, which becomes Ama; at least in the singular active form, which is all that these exercises require. More can be found about this subject in the chapter on verbs.
21 The 3rd, 4th and 5th declensions

21.1 3rd, 4th, and 5th Declension Nouns

We have already seen the first two declensions:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>1st declension</th>
<th>2nd declension</th>
<th>-um (neuter)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-um (neuter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>puell-a</td>
<td>serv-us/ puer</td>
<td>bell-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>puell-ae</td>
<td>serv-ī</td>
<td>bell-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>puell-am</td>
<td>serv-ūm</td>
<td>bell-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>puell-ās</td>
<td>serv-ōs</td>
<td>bell-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>puell-ae</td>
<td>serv-īrum</td>
<td>bell-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>puell-ārum</td>
<td>serv-ōrum</td>
<td>bell-īrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>puell-āe</td>
<td>serv-ō</td>
<td>bell-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>puell-ās</td>
<td>serv-īs</td>
<td>bell-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>puell-ā</td>
<td>serv-ō</td>
<td>bell-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>puell-ās</td>
<td>serv-īs</td>
<td>bell-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We will now complete the table of nouns with the 3rd, 4th, and 5th declensions. These declensions are more difficult to work with because their nominative and accusative plural forms are identical, as are their dative and ablative plural forms. To distinguish the cases, you must use a very simple key: context. Context will tell you the meaning.

21.1.1 3rd Declension Masculine or Feminine (each word has a set gender): rē, m.

3rd declension nouns have two stems: The nominative and vocative singular stem and the stem used for all other cases. Both stems have to be memorized for each noun. Feminine and masculine forms are indistinguishable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Declension</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>rēx</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>rēg-em</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>rēg-is</td>
<td>rēg-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>rēgī</td>
<td>rēg-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>rēg-e</td>
<td>rēg-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.1.2 3rd Declension Neuter i-stem: mare

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Declension Neuter</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative*</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>mar-ia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>mar-ia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>mar-is</td>
<td>mar-ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>marī</td>
<td>maribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>marī</td>
<td>maribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.1.3 Other 3rd Declension Neuter: litus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3rd Declension Neuter</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative*</td>
<td>litus</td>
<td>litor-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>litus</td>
<td>litor-ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>litor-is</td>
<td>litor-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>litorī</td>
<td>litor-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>litorī</td>
<td>litor-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.1.4 List of common 3rd declension stem change patterns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Main stem</th>
<th>Main gender</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>masc/fem</td>
<td>canis, navis, hostis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>masc/fem</td>
<td>urbs, rex*, matrix*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>-tis</td>
<td>masc/fem</td>
<td>nox*, mons, pons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-o</td>
<td>-onis</td>
<td>masc/fem</td>
<td>legio, auditio, statio</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The 3rd, 4th and 5th declensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular Nominate</th>
<th>Main stem</th>
<th>Main gender</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-inis</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>carmen, flumen, examen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-or</td>
<td>-oris</td>
<td>masc/fem</td>
<td>amor, timor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-oris</td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>litus, corpus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-eris</td>
<td></td>
<td>neuter</td>
<td>genus, vulner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- regs and matrices, respectively, but the gs and cs both compound into x. The c and g stay
  in the other cases, hence regis and matricis as their genitives. Nox (gen. noctis) works
  similarly.

21.2 4th Declension Masculine/Feminine (each word has a set gender) *gradus*, m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4th Declension</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>grad-us</td>
<td>grad-üs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>grad-um</td>
<td>grad-üm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>grad-äus</td>
<td>grad-äum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>grad-a</td>
<td>grad-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>grad-ä</td>
<td>grad-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.2.1 4th Declension Neuter: *corn*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4th Declension Neuter</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>corn-ä</td>
<td>corn-ua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>corn-ä</td>
<td>corn-ua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>corn-ä</td>
<td>corn-ua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>corn-ä</td>
<td>corn-üm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>corn-ä</td>
<td>corn-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>corn-ä</td>
<td>corn-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.2.2 5th Declension Masculine/Feminine (each word has a set gender; most are feminine): *rēs*, f.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5th Declension Feminine/Masculine</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>r-ēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>r-ēs</td>
<td>r-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>r-ēm</td>
<td>r-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>r-ē</td>
<td>r-ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>r-ē</td>
<td>r-ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ablative</td>
<td>r-ē</td>
<td>r-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 21.3 Exercises

### 21.3.1 Exercise 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>villa, -ae</em></td>
<td>farmhouse</td>
<td>1st declension feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mittō, -ere, misī, missum</em></td>
<td>send</td>
<td>3rd conjugation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nomen, nominis</em></td>
<td>name</td>
<td>3rd declension neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>maledicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum</em></td>
<td>insult</td>
<td>3rd conjugation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>placeō, -ere, placui, placitum + dat</em></td>
<td>please</td>
<td>Can be used as an impersonal verb, eg. <em>mihi placet + inf = it pleases me to...</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>quā re</em></th>
<th>on account of which</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>iste, ista, istud</em></td>
<td>that damn man/woman/thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>interficiō, -icere, -eci, -fectum</em></td>
<td>kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>volō, velle, voluī</em></td>
<td>want, be willing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mandō, mandere, mansī, mansum</em></td>
<td>chew on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translate the following:

*Hodiē militēs ad villam meā amāc mittō. Meō amicō, Marcō Tullō nomine, nē in Senātō maledicere placet, quā re istum interficere volō.*

For extra credit, who in the late Republic might have said such a thing?

(The answer should be: Catiline?)

### 21.3.2 Exercise 2

Translate the following:

*Eheu! Mūs meum pānem mandit. Nunc nihil habō. Me miserum!*

Category:Latin¹

---

¹ [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin)
22 Irregular Verbs & Revision

22.1 Irregular Verbs

Irregular verbs do not fit in any particular conjugation. Irregular verbs conjugate but not in a predictable manner. An example of an irregular verb that you have met is 'esse'. There are a few others which will be listed in the present indicate active tense below for you to memorise and refer to.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>ego</th>
<th>tu</th>
<th>is/ea</th>
<th>nos</th>
<th>vos</th>
<th>ei/ea</th>
<th>Imperative sing.</th>
<th>Imp. pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ire</td>
<td>to go</td>
<td>eo</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>imus</td>
<td>itis</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>sum</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>este</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>to be</td>
<td>fio</td>
<td>fis</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>finus</td>
<td>fitis</td>
<td>fiunt</td>
<td>fi</td>
<td>fite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velle</td>
<td>to wish</td>
<td>volo</td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>vult</td>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>(none)</td>
<td>(none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malle</td>
<td>to prefer</td>
<td>malo</td>
<td>mavis</td>
<td>mavult</td>
<td>malum</td>
<td>mavul-tis</td>
<td>malunt</td>
<td>(none)</td>
<td>(none)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nolle</td>
<td>to be unwilling</td>
<td>nolo</td>
<td>non vis</td>
<td>nolu-mus</td>
<td>non</td>
<td>nolunt</td>
<td>noli*</td>
<td>nolite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferre*</td>
<td>to carry</td>
<td>fero</td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>fer</td>
<td>ferte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The imperatives noli and nolite are used to mean "don't", eg. "nolite ire" = "don't go!"

Sometimes fere is considered to be an 'o' stem 3rd conjugation verb. For practical purposes fere is irregular.
22.2 Exercise 1

1. Copy out this table and translate.

Translate the following sentences:


Answer the following questions:

15. What do the irregular verbs have in common with regular verbs? 16. Why do we use 'boni' in question 10, 11, and 12 but 'bonus' in question 7, 8 and 9?

22.3 Exercise 2

Exercises:

1. Decline the following five nouns in both singular and plural number in the five common cases (nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, ablative):
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nauta</td>
<td>atrium</td>
<td>servus</td>
<td>dictator</td>
<td>rex</td>
<td>cornu</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Irregular Verbs & Revision
2. Conjugate the verb 'servāre' in both singular and plural number and all three persons.
3. Conjugate the verb 'esse', in both singular and plural number and all three persons.
4. Translate:
Nota Bene: Often Latin uses the present to indicate a 'vivid past'. It would be suitable to translate the following passage in the past tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>heri</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td><em>heri</em> is an adverb. Don't try to use it as a noun (&quot;Yesterday was a good day&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taberna, -ae</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>1st declension feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solea, -ae</td>
<td>sandle</td>
<td>1st declension feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sic</td>
<td>so, and so, thus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solus, -a, -um</td>
<td>alone</td>
<td>The adverb form (only) is <em>solum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casa, -ae</td>
<td>house, hut</td>
<td>1st declension feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sto, stare, steti, statum</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>One of the few irregular first conjugation verbs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Category:Latin

---

23 Translation Exercise

23.1 Using a Dictionary

To find a Latin word in the dictionary can be difficult. Foremost, Latin verbs are listed using their the 'present indicative 1st person singular active' construct of the verb. Thus, to find the meaning of the verb 'amāre', one must find 'amā' listed in the dictionary. Thus, one must use their wits to determine what the stem and what is the ending of the verb. A bit of searching around in the dictionary may be required. There are a few verbs which are highly irregular which must be learnt such as 'ferō', I carry.

Nouns are usually much easier. They are always given in the nominative singular case. If you see a noun such as 'vōcem', and do not know what it is, do not fret. If you look for 'vōc' in the dictionary, you will not find what you are looking for. 'em' is typically a third declension accusative ending, thus you should be aware that third declension nouns have radically changing stems. Those which have the consonent 'c' usually have the consonent 'x' replacing it in the nominative singular. Thus the nominative singular of vōcem, is vōx. Likewise, 'g' is also often used when shifting from nominative singular cases to other cases. For example, rēx becomes rēgem in the accusative. There are plenty of other simple rules which one learns through experience.

Unconjugatable and indeclinable words are listed 'as is'.

23.2 Exercise 1

23.2.1 Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confessio, -ōnis</td>
<td>confession</td>
<td>3rd declension feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, libri</td>
<td>book</td>
<td>2nd declension masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de + abl.</td>
<td>from, down from, aside; about, concerning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.2.2 Passage

Translate the following passage:
Confessiōnum meārum libri tredecim et de malis et de bonis meis deum laudant iūstum et bonum atque in eum excitant hūmānum intellectum et affectum. Interim quod ad mē attinet, hoc in mē egērunt cum scriberentur et agunt cum leguntur. Quid de illīs alī sentiant, ipsī viderint; multīs tamen frātribus ēs multum placuisse et placēre sciō. Category:Latin\(^1\)

---

\(^{1}\) [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin)
24 Imperfect and Future indicative active constructs

Imperfect and Future constructs

Warning: Beyond the imperfect, this page cannot is not entirely clear. Do not use it beyond the basic imperfect if you are a first time Latin student. Specific aspects confused me until I got up in the morning. Of course, I never knew them very well anyway.

See discussion for my thoughts on this.

I have substantially corrected this page. I apologize for my prior errors.

Smkatz1 14:14, 13 Nov 2004 (UTC)

24.1 Imperfect Active Indicative

The imperfect is a construct like: I was seeing. In Latin it would look like this: Videbam.

English has a similar construct called progressive past. Actions seem incomplete, and so the imperfect label. For example, 'I was running,' 'We were sailing,' 'They were calling.' Note that 'to be' is always there. Latin, however, would sometimes use imperfect like simple past; accordingly, 'We were sailing' could be translated as 'We sailed.' Other translations of imperfect can be used to/kept such as 'We used to sail/We kept sailing.'

Regardless of language, the concept of an imperfect is important. Imperfect is called imperfect for a reason - in Latin, the verb 'perficere' means to finish/complete, which is what perfect is from. Thus, imperfect, in the grammatical sense, means not finished - that the action could be or could not be completed. Perfect instead means it has been finished - I saw. You have already seen, and it is now completed. I was seeing implies that the action is not yet completed.

The perfect tense, which we will learn later, is a more immediate reference to the past. The name, imperfect, helps you remember its use: in situations where you can't say when an event started or ended or happened, you must use the imperfect.

In situations where you can know when an event started or ended or happened, use the perfect.

You conjugate the imperfect tense this way: verb + ba + personal ending

The endings for imperfect are:

http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/User%3ASmkatz
Imperfect and Future indicative active constructs

Sg. 1. -bam 2. -bas 3. -bat Pl. 1. -bamus 2. -batis 3. -bant

Note that the only thing we add are ba + the personal endings (the same as in the present tense) to the infinitive stem. This gives us the imperfect conjugation.

Note that in third and fourth conjugations, you will have to form it differently. There is *no* rule to explain this, it just is, although there are memorization techniques that can help.

venire is 4th conjugation and is formed like: veniebam veniebas veniebat veniebamus veniebatis veniebant

For third conjugation, an example used in some textbooks/study guides is: capere (to capture or seize)
capiebam capiebas capiebat capiebamus capitabatis capiebant

Note that it is easiest to think of what the endings -ere and ire lack. The imperfect -ba + the personal ending, which we can call the imperfect conjugation, must be prefixed by ie.

A few examples:

amabam - I was loving (A-conjugation--1st) monebatis - You were warning
[object/personage] (of something negative) (Pl.) (2nd Conjugation) vinciebamus - We were defeating (long I-conjugation--3rd conjugation) capiebant - They were catching (short I-conjugation--3rd conjugation) pellebat - She/he/it was propelling (drive something (not a vehicle), propel something) (consonantic conjugation)

(Wiki-reading tips: See discussion. Some of the above may be unclear, however the clarifying '−' and '/' indicate verification. We may not know what the original author intended, but we know what conjugations the examples are.)

24.2 Future I, Active

Future active is a tense which, unsurprisingly, refers to something which has not yet happened. The endings are fairly basic, and follow fairly regular rules - however, the future endings used in 1st and 2nd conjugation differ from the endings of 3rd, 3rd-io (not a typo!), and 4th.

For example - 'amo, amare' (1st conjugation) would be

Ama bo - I will love
* Ama bis - You will love

Ama bit - He/She/It will love

Ama bimus - We will love

Ama bitis - Y'all will love
Ama bunt - They will love

- 1st person singular and 3rd person plural use bo and bunt, not bi.

Note the B and the BIs - the distinguishing feature of future tense in Latin.

With "venio, venire" (4th conjugation--io), however, the endings are different. In future, this is what they look like:

Veni am - I will come

Veni es - You will come

Veni et - He/She/It will come

Veni emus - We will come

Veni etis - Y'all will come

Veni ent - They will come

[deleted paragraphs go here. deleted to maintain rigorous accuracy, which we will go back to striving for.)

To clarify: venire, venio.. we know it is 4th conjugation verb and if we look at its first person singular conjugation, we see that it is an io verb, because the conjugation of the first person singular is 'venio'. (an io category exists within 3rd and fourth conjugations and is a more general concept which we will briefly introduce here by using venire, venio as an example).

Let's first identify what we know.

We know it is 4th conjugation -io because it ends in ire, which tells us that it is 4th conjugation, and io because its nominative singular ends in io (venio). Because it is io, we leave the i in. So, when we are asked (as all textbooks should phrase these new questions):

1. What are the steps to form the future 2nd person conjugation?

We say:

1. It is better to know more than you need: check the infinitive nominative singular, we now know that it is 4th conjugation io. 2. We now know that we can form the stem: the stem is veni and can then add a personal ending--leaving in the i. We leave in the i because it is io. Because it looks weird, we never leave the i in the future perfect.

What is the form for venire, in the future tense, in the 2nd person?

The answer is venies.
24.3 Future conjugation

Example: I will love: amabo

The table at the end of this page tries to summarize the future tense, with both sets of personal endings. As the warning notes, this summary may confuse some.

As an aid to your understanding, this table only applies to the future tense. Do not assume the table is displaying a pattern that is somehow applicable to all of Latin.

(Wiki-reading-tip: This is why they are in the future section, and were not discussed before.)

The A- and the E- conjugation are (relatively) straightforward. The others are more advanced, and as the warning notes, could confuse a first-time student. Commercial textbooks probably explain it better at this point, although laying their explanation in a table like the one below is well-advised. Leave items marked with a ? in until issues are resolved.

Take a look at the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>long I (vin-cere/3rd conj.)</th>
<th>short I</th>
<th>Consonan-tic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ama-bo</td>
<td>mone-bo</td>
<td>vinci-am</td>
<td>capi-am</td>
<td>pell-am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-bís</td>
<td>mone-bís</td>
<td>vinci-es</td>
<td>capi-es</td>
<td>pell-es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-bít</td>
<td>mone-bít</td>
<td>vinci-et</td>
<td>capi-et</td>
<td>pell-et</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-bímus</td>
<td>mone-bímus</td>
<td>vinci-emus</td>
<td>capi-emus</td>
<td>pell-emus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-bítis</td>
<td>mone-bítis</td>
<td>vinci-etis</td>
<td>capi-etis</td>
<td>pell-etis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ama-bínt</td>
<td>mone-bínt</td>
<td>vinci-ent</td>
<td>capi-ent</td>
<td>pell-ent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The vocabulary mostly consists of verbs, and can easily be looked up in a dictionary. We will give a limited translation below, and the rest, for those who are particularly adept at language learning, can be learned through immersion.

capere (3rd conjugation--short ere): to seize, metaphorically or literally [see dictionary for full explanation]

amare (first conjugation -are): to love

EXERCISE: Can you be your own editor?

monere (what conjugation? 2nd Conjugation Does it change based on the macron over the first vowel on the ending? Yes long ere = 2nd short =3rd[long ere vs. short ere?] It means to warn like in admonish (an English word that means to scold lightly.)

Category:Latin

---

138
25 Chapter 2 Verse

25.1 Using a Dictionary

Foremost, Latin verbs are listed using the present indicative first person singular active construct of the verb. For example, to find the meaning of the verb *amāre*, you must find *amō* listed in the dictionary. Some verbs like *esse* and *ferre* are highly irregular and use different stems to form the perfect tenses.

Nouns are usually much easier. They are always given in the nominative singular. If you see a noun such as *vōcem* and do not know what it is, do not fret. If you look for *voc-* in the dictionary, you will not find what you are looking for. The ending *-em* typically belongs to the third-declension accusative; thus, be aware that third-declension nouns have radically changing stems. Those that have the consonant *c* or *g* usually have the consonant *x* in the nominative singular. Thus the nominative singular of *vōcem* is *vōx*, and *rēx* becomes *rēgem* in the accusative singular. There are plenty of other simple rules which you will learn through experience.

Words that do not conjugate or decline (like prepositions and particles) are listed under their only form.

25.2 Exercise 1

25.2.1 Vocabulary

1. *affectus*, -ūs, m., goodwill
2. *confessō*, -onis, f., confession
3. *de*, from, about, concerning
4. *liber*, librī, m., book
5. *malus* -a -um, evil, bad
6. *placēre* + dative, to please (*placuśse* is a perfect infinitive)
7. *filia*, -ae f., daughter
8. *puella*, -ae f., girl

25.2.2 Other Difficulties

1. *quod ad mē attinet*, as far as I’m concerned
2. *cum scriberentur*, when they were written (imperfect passive subjunctive)
3. *quid sentiant*, what they think (present subjunctive in indirect question)
4. *ipsā viderint*, (loosely) they will see in their own way (future perfect)
5. *ōs placēre scī*, accusative-infinitive construction for indirect statement: "I know they [the books] please"

### 25.2.3 Passage

Translate the following passage:

Confessōnum mērum libri tredecim et de malis et de bonis meās deum laudant àustum et bonum atque in eum excitant humanum intellectum et affectum. Interim quod ad me attinet, hoc in me ēgerunt cum scriberentur et agunt cum leguntur. quid de illis alē sentiant, ipsī viderint; multīs tamen frātribus ōs multum placūsse et placēre scī.

Category:Latin¹

### 25.3 Chapter 3: Advanced Sentences

---

¹ [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin)
26 Imperatives
27 Imperative

27.1 Positive Imperative

27.1.1 English

In English (and in Latin), the positive imperative is a command. For example:

- **Do it!**
- **Stop**, in the name of love!
- **Take** out the garbage!

27.1.2 Latin

In Latin, the imperative singular is found by taking the last two letters off of the infinitive. The six exceptions to this rule are dicere (dic), ducere (duc), facere (fac), velle, malle (infinitives not used) and nolle (noli). Ferre (fer) and esse (es) are often considered irregular due to the lack of a vowel at the end but we can see that applying the rule of removing the last two letters forms the imperatives correctly.

**Examples:**

Run, boy!

*Curre*, *puer!* (from *curro*, *curre*; to run)

Go!

*I!* (from *eo*, *ire*; to go)

Seize the day!

*Carpe diem!* (from *carpo*, *carpere*; to pluck)

**Questions**

**Write out:**

1. Love me, Octavia! (to love = *amo*, *amare*)
2. Come to Rome! (to come = *venio*, *venire*; Rome = *Roma*, *Romae*, f.)

---

1 In many cases, the vocative will be used with the imperative, unless the imperative is used in a conversation or at a reader, as in a letter or guide.
27.1.3 Plural

To form the plural imperative in Latin, take the 2nd person plural present form of the verb (e.g. amatis, sedetis, regitis, venitis) and replace the is at the end with e. The only exceptions to the rule are velle, malle (imperatives not used) and nolle (nolite). Ferre (ferte) and esse (este) are often considered irregular but applying the rule (fertis -> ferte, estis -> este) correctly forms the imperatives.

Go home, boys!

*Itedomum, puери.*

Stay, all of you!

*Manetē, omnes!*

Exercises

Write out:

1. Take them, men! (to take = adripio, adripere)
2. Fear me, children! (to fear = timeo, timere; children = liberi)

27.2 Negative Imperative

27.2.1 English

In English, we use the word 'don't' for prohibitions, or negative imperatives. For example:

- Don't do it!
- Don't say that!

27.2.2 Latin

Similarly, in Latin the negative imperative is formed with two words, the imperative of nolo, nolle and the infinitive.

*Nolo* by itself means 'I do not want,' but in its imperative it means 'do not...!'

*Nolle* is irregular, and its imperative forms are *noli* and *nolite*.

Examples

Do not fear me!

*Nolime timere!*

Don't build the aqueduct there, soldiers!
Nolite aquaeductum ibi aedificare, milites!

Don’t wash the dog, boys!

Nolite, pueri, canem lavare!

Exercises

Translate:

1. Don’t cry, daughter! (to cry = fleo, flere)
2. Don’t hurt me, friends! (to hurt = vulnero, vulnerare)
3. Don’t go into the water, boys!
4. Don’t hurt them, soldiers! (them = use eos, masculine accusative plural of is, ea, id)
28 Active v. Passive Verbs

A verb's voice shows the relationship between the subject and the action expressed by the verb. Latin has two voices: active and passive.

In the active voice, the subject of the clause performs the verb on something else (the object), e.g., 'The girl sees the boy.'

In the passive voice, the subject of the sentence receives the action of the verb, e.g., 'The boy is seen by the girl.'

The personal endings in the active voice are: -ō, -ō, -ō, -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.

The personal endings in the passive voice (present, imperfect, future) are: -r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur.

In the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect, the passive voice is formed by the fourth principal part plus the proper forms of sum, esse. For the perfect tense, use the present forms of esse; for the pluperfect use the imperfect forms of esse, and for the future perfect use the future forms of esse. The fourth principal part, when used in a passive construction, acts as a first-second declension adjective and is declined accordingly.

As stated before, when the passive voice is used, the subject receives the action of the verb from another agent. This agent, when it is a person, is expressed by the preposition ā/ab plus the ablative case. This construction is called the ablative of personal agent. The ablative of cause is used without a preposition when the agent is not a person.

28.1 Examples:

- Active: Puella puerum videt. (The girl sees the boy.)
- Passive: Puer ā puellā videtur. (The boy is seen by the girl.)

Puella takes ā and the ablative, as it is a personal agent.

- Active: Timor virum capit. (Fear seizes the man.)
- Passive: Vir timore capitur. (The man is seized by fear.)

Timore is ablative of cause.

- Active: Hostēs urbem oppugrābant. (The enemies were attacking the city.)
- Passive: Urbs ab hostibus oppugrābantur. (The city was being attacked by the enemies.)
28.2 Deponent verbs

Some verbs are always passive in form, even though they have an active meaning. For example:

- filius agricolam sequitur - The son follows the farmer
- sol ortus est - The sun has risen
- agricola hostes verentur - The farmers fear the enemies
- gladio usus sum - I used a sword

Some, called semi-deponent verbs, take on a passive form on only in the perfect. For example:

- colono confido - I trust the farmer
- colono confius sum - I trusted the farmer

Note that some deponent and semi-deponent verbs take the accusative case (eg. vereor, vereri, veritus sum = I fear), some the ablative (eg. utor, uti, usus sum = I use) and some the dative (eg. confido, confidere, confius sum = I trust). When you first encounter such a verb in Latin, be sure to remember the case of the object the verb is taking along with its spelling and meaning.

Category:Latin

\[1 \text{ http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin}\]
29 Indicative Passive Verbs

See discussion for a tutorial on the passive voice and how to use it in Latin, including external links which explain future, imperfect, and present indicative passive verb forms.

I consider commercial textbooks to be inadequate, so I do not believe that this article can wait.

Here are the conjugations for the imperfect passive tenses. The basic rules for going to passive are:

In the first person, add -r if the active ending is a vowel, otherwise change the final constant to an -r. Examples:
paro (I prepare) -> paror (I am being prepared)
aperiebam (I was opening) -> aperiebar (I was being opened)
defendemus (we will defend) -> defendemur (we will be defended)
tenebimus (we will hold) -> tenebimur (we will be held)

In the third person, add -ur. Examples:
parat (he prepares) -> paratur (he is being prepared)
aperiebat (he was opening) -> aperiebatur (he was being opened)
defendent (they will defend) -> defendentur (they will be defended)
tenebunt (they will hold) -> tenebuntur (they will be held)

In the second person, things get more complicated. For the plural, replace 'tis' with 'mini'. Note the exception in "ferre", where "fertis" becomes "fermini". In the word "ferre", the 'rm' letter combination consistently gets separated (ferimus instead of fermus, ferimur instead of femur and ferimini instead of fermi). For the singular present, take out the active ending, add the thematic vowel (a from -are, e from -ere, i from -ire and nothing from -re, as in ferre) of the verb's infinitive ending and add -ris. Examples:
paras (you prepare) -> parar is (you are being prepared)
tenes (you are holding) -> teneris (you are being held)

defendis (you are defending) -> defenderis (you are being defended)

audis (you are listening) -> audiris (you are being listened to)

defendetis (you will defend) -> defendemini (you are being defended)

amabis (you will love) -> amaberis (you will be loved)

Note the -eris ending in the future passive. The future active bo, bis, bit, bimus, bitis, bunt looks like the third conjugation so the passive bor, beris, batur, bimur, bimini, buntur ooks like the third conjugation. The imperfect passive is bar, baris, batur, bamur, bamini, bantur.
### Conjugation in the Present Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive:</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>mixed</th>
<th>4th</th>
<th>Irregular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amare</td>
<td>terrere</td>
<td>legere</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>audire</td>
<td>ferre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st person:</th>
<th>amor</th>
<th>terreo</th>
<th>legor</th>
<th>capior</th>
<th>audior</th>
<th>fero</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd person:</td>
<td>amaris</td>
<td>terreris</td>
<td>legeris</td>
<td>caperis</td>
<td>audiris</td>
<td>ferris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person:</td>
<td>amatur</td>
<td>terretur</td>
<td>legitur</td>
<td>capitur</td>
<td>auditur</td>
<td>fertur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st person:</th>
<th>amamur</th>
<th>terremur</th>
<th>legitimur</th>
<th>capimur</th>
<th>audimur</th>
<th>ferimur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd person:</td>
<td>amamini</td>
<td>terremini</td>
<td>legitimini</td>
<td>capimini</td>
<td>audimini</td>
<td>ferimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person:</td>
<td>amantur</td>
<td>terrentur</td>
<td>leguntur</td>
<td>capituntur</td>
<td>audituntur</td>
<td>fertuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Conjugation in the Imperfect Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive:</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>mixed</th>
<th>4th</th>
<th>Irregular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amare</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st person:</td>
<td>amabar</td>
<td>terrebar</td>
<td>legebar</td>
<td>capiebar</td>
<td>audiebar</td>
<td>ferebar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person:</td>
<td>amabar is</td>
<td>terrebar is</td>
<td>legebar is</td>
<td>capiebar is</td>
<td>audiebar is</td>
<td>ferebar is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person:</td>
<td>amabatur</td>
<td>terrebatur</td>
<td>legebatur</td>
<td>capiebatur</td>
<td>audiebatur</td>
<td>ferebatur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st person:</td>
<td>amabamur</td>
<td>terrebamur</td>
<td>legebamur</td>
<td>capiebamur</td>
<td>audiebamur</td>
<td>ferebamur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person:</td>
<td>amabamini</td>
<td>terrebamini</td>
<td>legebamini</td>
<td>capiebamini</td>
<td>audiebamini</td>
<td>ferebamini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person:</td>
<td>amabantur</td>
<td>terreban-</td>
<td>legebantur</td>
<td>capieban-</td>
<td>audieban-</td>
<td>ferebantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>turtur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Conjugation in the Future Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive:</th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>mixed</th>
<th>4th</th>
<th>Irregular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person:</td>
<td>amare</td>
<td>terrere</td>
<td>legere</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>audire</td>
<td>ferre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person:</td>
<td>amabor</td>
<td>terrebor</td>
<td>legar</td>
<td>capiar</td>
<td>audiar</td>
<td>ferrar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person:</td>
<td>amabitur</td>
<td>terrebitur</td>
<td>legetur</td>
<td>capietur</td>
<td>audietur</td>
<td>feretur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural 1st person:</td>
<td>amabimur</td>
<td>terre-</td>
<td>legemur</td>
<td>capiemur</td>
<td>audiemur</td>
<td>feremur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person:</td>
<td>amabimini</td>
<td>terrerbimini</td>
<td>legemini</td>
<td>capiemini</td>
<td>audiemini</td>
<td>feremini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person:</td>
<td>amabuntur</td>
<td>terreburntur</td>
<td>legentur</td>
<td>capientur</td>
<td>audientur</td>
<td>ferentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Indicative Passive Verbs

Category:Latin¹

¹ http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin
30 Principal Parts

30.1 Principal Parts

All Latin verbs are identified by four principal parts. By using the four principal parts, one can obtain any and all forms of the verb, including participles, infinitives, gerunds and the like.

Examples of principal parts from verbs of each conjugation:

1st: *ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum* (to walk)
2nd: *doceō, docēre, docū, doctum* (to teach)
3rd: *mittō, mittere, nāsā, mīssum* (to send)
4th: *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum* (to hear)

For all regular verbs, the principal parts consist of the first person singular present active indicative, the infinitive, the first person singular perfect active indicative, and the supine (or in some texts, the perfect passive participle).

- Deponent verbs have only three principal parts:
  *patrior, patī, passus sum* (to suffer)
  *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum* (to use)

- Likewise, semi-deponent verbs have only three:
  *audeō, audīre, ausus sum* (to dare)
  *gaudeō, gaudīre, gāsus sum* (to rejoice)

Some verbs lack fourth principal parts (e.g., *timeō, timēre, timā*; to be afraid); others, less commonly, lack a third in addition (e.g., *ferro, ferre, tuli, latum*; to bring/carry). Others, such as *sum, esse, fā, fūrus*, may use the future active participle (*fūrus*) as their fourth principal part; this indicates that the verb cannot be made passive.

Category:Latin

---

31 The Perfect Indicative Tense

31.1 Latin Perfect Active Tense

The perfect tense is used for action that has already been completed. English has two corresponding constructions: present perfect and simple past. The **present perfect** uses the present of 'to have' plus the past participle. ('I have sailed to Athens twice.' 'These women have spoken the truth.') The **simple past** is a separate verb form that indicates a completed action. ('I came, I saw, I conquered.') Another related form, which uses 'did' as an auxiliary, is used for emphasis, negation or interrogation. ('I did see you at the Forum, didn't I?')

In Latin, the perfect indicative is equivalent to all of these.

The perfect endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>-ī (ego)</td>
<td>-īmus (nōs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>-īstī (tu)</td>
<td>-īstīs (tōs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>-īt (is/ea/id)</td>
<td>-īrunī (1) (a/eae/ea)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is an alternative third person plural ending, -ēre, used mainly in poetry. For example, amāvēre = amāvērunē.

Although these endings apply to all Latin verbs, each verb's stem changes differently in the perfect tense. To find the stem, use the third principal part, which is the first person singular perfect active indicative form of that verb.

- To conjugate the perfect present, attach the personal ending to the perfect stem.

31.1.1 Example

- *amō, amāre, amāvē, amāvērum*; to love, like

Note that *amāvē* is the first person singular perfect active indicative. Drop the -ī to get the stem, which is *amāvē*, then add personal endings.

**Singular:**

- *amāvē* + -ī = *amāvē* (I have loved.)
- *amāvē* + -īstī = *amāvēstī* (You have loved.)
- *amāvē* + -īt = *amāvit* (He/She/It has loved.)
Plural:

- *amāv- + -imus = amāvimus (We have loved.)
- *amāv- + -istis = amāvistis (You have loved.)
- *amāv- + -erunt = amāvērunt (They have loved.)

Category: Latin

Basically, the Perfect indicative active is the perfect tense under a flash name.

### 31.2 Rules for Finding the Perfect Stem

The perfect stem can often be guessed by knowing the verb's first person singular and infinitive. Here are some rules that perfect stems often follow.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Perfect First Person Singular</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st (-are)</td>
<td>-avi -i -edi</td>
<td>-avi is used for the overwhelming majority of verbs. Exceptions include iuvare and lavare (iuvi, lavi) and dare (dedi).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd (-eo, -ere):</td>
<td>-ui -i -si</td>
<td>-ui is the most common but much less so than -avi in the first conjugation. Some verbs, like videre and sedere, become vidi and sedi. For the -si rule, the letter d at the end of the stem, if present, is dropped and cs and gs compound into x (eg. rideo -&gt; ridsi -&gt; risi).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd (-o, -ere):</td>
<td>-i -si -idi</td>
<td>Many verbs, like defendere, keep the same perfect stem, so the first person perfect singular becomes defendi. This can create tense ambiguity in the third person singular and first person plural (defendit, defendimus). The -si rule follows the same conventions as the 2nd conjugation (eg. ludere -&gt; ludsi -&gt; lusi, regere -&gt; regsi -&gt; rexi). The -idi rule is used with compounds of dare, which are all third conjugation (eg. reddere -&gt; reddidi, credere -&gt; credi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>Form 1</td>
<td>Form 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mixed (-io, -ere):</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-ivi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th (-io, ire)</td>
<td>-ivi</td>
<td>-ui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ire (irreg.)</td>
<td>-ii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esse (irreg.)</td>
<td>fui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the -i rule, the last vowel in the stem is often changed to e (eg. capere -> cepi, facere -> feci). For the ivi rule, the stem is unchanged (eg. cupere -> cupivi). For the -si rule, just like in the 3rd conjugation, cs and gs compound into x and the changing vowel rule also applies (eg. conspicere -> conspexi).

For the -io rule, fairly straightforward. eg. audire -> audivi, aperire -> aperui.

All ire compounds (eg. transire, redire, inire) follow this rule.

The perfect of esse is fui, some verbs in the esse family change the perfect slightly (eg. abesse -> afui, posse -> potui).
The Perfect Indicative Passive Verbs

The perfect passive is an easy tense to form in Latin, and it is also one of the most useful. The verb "to love" in the perfect passive would translate into English as 'I was loved'.

32.1 Forming the Perfect Passive in Latin

In order to form the perfect passive you must be familiar with the principal parts of the verb with which you are working, e.g., *amo, amāre, amātus, amātum*. The fourth principal part is the perfect passive participle.

- In its neuter nominative form, the perfect passive participle is identical to the nominative supine (a fourth-declension noun whose morphology and usage are very restricted). Be careful not to confuse the two.

To use the perfect passive, first determine the gender and number of the subject of the sentence. For example, in the sentence 'The queen was killed by the soldier,' *queen* is the subject. In Latin, *queen* will be feminine nominative singular (*regina*).

Now make the participle agree with the subject in gender and number (and case), just as you would with any adjective. As a review, the singular endings for the participle, a first/second declension adjective, are:

| Masculine: | -us - (amātus) |
| Feminine: | -a - (amāta) |
| Neuter: | -um - (amātum) |

The endings for plural nouns are:

| Masculine: | -ī ī ī - (amātī) |
| Feminine: | -ae - (amātēae) |
| Neuter: | -a - (amāta) |

These participles by themselves can be translated with 'having been', eg. *amātus* = having been loved. Add a present form of *sum*, and you have the perfect passive, eg. *amātus sum* = I am having been loved = I have been loved.

32.2 Conjugation of Verbs in the Perfect Passive

32.2.1 First Conjugation (*amM to love*)
The Perfect Indicative Passive Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>amātus(/-a) sum</td>
<td>amātīr(-ae) sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>amātus(/-a) es</td>
<td>amātīr(-ae) estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>amātus(/-a/-um) est</td>
<td>amātīr(-ae/-a) sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.2.2 Second Conjugation (moneM to warn)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>monitus sum</td>
<td>monitī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>monitus es</td>
<td>monitī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>monitus est</td>
<td>monitī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.2.3 Third Conjugation (regM to rule)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>rectus sum</td>
<td>rectī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>rectus es</td>
<td>rectī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>rectus est</td>
<td>rectī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.2.4 Fourth Conjugation (audM to hear)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>audītus sum</td>
<td>audītī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>audītus es</td>
<td>audītī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>audītus est</td>
<td>audītī sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32.2.5 Notes

1. Remember that the subject must agree with the passive participle.
2. Passive verbs do not take an object. Instead they have an agent or instrument, indicated by the ablative case.

32.3 Examples

Regina a milite interfecta est.

"The queen was killed by the soldier."

Rex ad proelium est a servis portātus.

"The king was carried to the battle by his slaves."

Numquam enim a Pomponia nostra certior sum factus esse cui dare litterās possem. (Cicero, Ad Atticum 1.5)
"For I was never made aware by our Pomponia that there was someone to whom I could give a letter."

### 32.4 Exercises

Convert the following sentences with relative clauses into sentences with the same meaning but using past participles.

*eg.* *Aemilianus vidit urbem quam deleverat* -&gt; *Aemilianus vidit urbem a se deletam*

1. *colonus exit casam quam vendidit*
2. *colonus videt nuntium* (*messenger*) *quam Romam misit*
3. *nuntius colono dedit epistolam quam coloni pater scripserat*
4. *colonus gratias egit* (*gave thanks*) *nuntio quem saepe viderat*
33 Future and Past Perfect Indicative Tenses

33.1 Future perfect

The future perfect tense is used for an action that will have been completed in the future by the time something else has happened.

English example: "I will have seen the movie by the time it comes out."

To form the future perfect, take the perfect stem and add the future perfect endings:

-erō -erimus
-eris -eritis
-erit -erint

Note the similarities to the future tense of sum, except for the third person plural ending -erint\(^1\) in place of -erunt, which serves as the perfect ending instead.

Hence: amāverō, I will have loved; vīderitis, you (pl.) will have seen

33.2 Pluperfect

The pluperfect tense is used to describe something in the past that happened before another event in the past.

English example: "I had graduated by the time I applied for a job."

To form the pluperfect, take the perfect stem and add the pluperfect endings:

-eram -erāmus
-erās -erātis
-erat -erānt

Hence: amāveram, I had loved; vīderātis, you (pl.) had seen

---

\(^1\) -int as an ending is rare; -erint and sint are two of the most common
33.3 Examples

_De Acutiliano autem negotio quod mihi mandaras (mandaveras), ut primum a tuo digressu Romam veni, confeceram._ (Cicero, _Ad Atticum_ 1.5)

'But as to the business of Acutilius that you had entrusted with me, I had already taken care of it when I came to Rome first thing after your departure.' Note the relationship of the pluperfect verbs _mandaras_ (-aras is a common contraction for -averas) and _confeceram_ to the perfect verb _veni._

_Ego certe meum officium praeestitero._ (Caesar, _De Bello Gallico_ IV)

'I certainly will have prevailed in my duty.'

Category:Latin

---

2 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin
34 Ablative Absolute and Accusative Infinitive Constructions

34.1 Ablative Absolute

The ablative absolute construction is used in a sentence to provide a background for the main action in the sentence. An ablative absolute is formed with a noun and an adjective or participle in the ablative case.

*convivis ingressis ille cenam parat*
With the guests having entered, he prepares dinner.

*viris in taberna bibentibus feminae diligenter laborabat*
With the men drinking in the tavern, the women worked diligently.

*omnibus ieiunis multos panes parare debuit*
With everyone (being) hungry, he had to prepare lots of bread.

34.2 Accusative Infinitive

The accusative infinitive construction is used to indirectly report speech or thoughts. An accusative infinitive construction is formed by taking the indirect clause and putting the subject in the accusative and the verb in the infinitive.

*ille credit pueros stultos esse*
He believes the boys to be fools = He believes that the boys are fools.

*magister parentibus dicit pueros stultos esse*
The teacher says to the parents that the boys are fools.

*colonus uxori dicit se confectum esse*
The farmer says to his wife that he is exhausted.

In this sentence, note how the reflexive *se* refers to the main subject of the sentence.

*colonus uxori dixit se confectum esse*
The farmer said to his wife that he was tired.
Ablative Absolute and Accusative Infinitive Constructions

Note how esse, despite being a present infinitive, is translated into the past tense. This is because the infinitive uses the action of the main verb, in this case *dixit* as a reference point instead of the present.

But what about sentences such as "the farmer *says* to his wife that he *worked* diligently"? For those, you need to use the **past infinitive**.

### 34.2.1 Overview of infinitives in all tenses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>amare</td>
<td>amari</td>
<td>monere</td>
<td>monitus</td>
<td>regere</td>
<td>regi</td>
<td>audire</td>
<td>audiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>amavisse</td>
<td>amatus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>monuisse</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>amaturus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>amatum iri</td>
<td>monitum iri</td>
<td>rectus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>rectum iri</td>
<td>auditum iri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The sentence 'The farmer says to his wife that he worked diligently' would thus translate as: 

*colonus uxori dicit se diligenter laboravisse*

The following examples show how different infinitives with the main verb in the past and present would appear in English:

- *colonus uxori dixit se diligenter laboravisse* = The farmer said to his wife that he had worked diligently.
- *colonus uxori dixit se diligenter laborare* = The farmer said to his wife that he was working diligently.
- *colonus uxori dixit se diligenter laboraturum esse* = The farmer said to his wife that he would work (or was going to work) diligently.
- *colonus uxori dicit se diligenter laboraturum esse* = The farmer said to his wife that he will work (or is going to work) diligently.
- *nuntius mihi dixit urbem deletam esse* = The messenger told me that the city had been destroyed.
- *nuntius mihi dixit urbem deler = The messenger told me that the city was being destroyed.
- *nuntius mihi dixit urbem deletum iri* = The messenger told me that the city would be destroyed (or was going to be destroyed).
- *nuntius mihi dicit urbem deletum iri* = The messenger told me that the city will be destroyed (or is going to be destroyed).

### 34.2.2 Translation Exercises

1. parentis absentibus pueri ludunt
2. multis hominibus audientibus consul orationem (*speech*) habet
3. consule loquente multi homines audient
4. agro vendito colonus Romam ingressus est
5. Antonius civibus dixit Brutum victum iri
6. Bruti fautores (*supporters*) crediderunt eum victurum esse
7. illi gaudebant Brutum multas legiones habere
8. sed paucis post mensibus nuntius venit et dixit Brutum victum esse
Chapter 3 Verse

The following poem is written in Hendecasyllabic. It is an introductory, dedication poem written by the poet Gaius Valerius Catullus¹.

it is commonly referred to as 'Catullus 1' or by its first line.

Cui dono lepidum novum libellum
arida modo pumice expolitum?
Corneli, tibi: namque tu solebas
meas esse aliquid putare nugas.
Iam tum, cum ausus es unus Italorum
omne aevum tribus explicare cartis...
Doctis, Iuppiter, et laboriosis!
Quare habe tibi quidquid hoc libelli—
qualecumque, quod, o patrona virgo,
plus uno maneat perenne saeco!

Category:Latin²

Chapter 4: The Subjunctive Mood and Complex Sentences

¹ http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Catullus
² http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin
36 The Subjunctive Mood

36.1 Subjunctives

The Subjunctive is one of the three different moods a Latin verb can take. The two other moods are the Indicative and the Imperative. The subjunctive is perhaps the most common and also most difficult to grasp, and there are a great number of different subjunctive uses.

The subjunctive mainly expresses doubt or potential and so is called 'jussive,' which is from 'iubere' - to command, bid. Whereas the indicative declares 'this happened' or "that happened," the subjunctive expresses what could have been or what could be.

**Examples**

- "Let me go" and "May I go?" are statements of potential; the speaker is not entirely certain his/her command will be followed.
- "Were I a king, I would have a golden toilet" expresses what could be, but what, in fact, is not. Speaker is not a king, and so will not get the toilet.
- "Fortune be with you" expresses the hope/potential that Fortune will favor you. The unstated but essential word here is 'may' - '[May] Fortune be with you.'

*If this were to happen,' or "May this happen!" or 'I ask you to make this happen" are all possible uses of the subjunctive.

There are four subjunctives: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. There are no subjunctives in the future tense, which already incorporates an element of doubt.

36.1.1 The Present Subjunctive

The present subjunctive is similar to the present indicative, except marked by a change of the theme vowel.

*present stem + theme vowel change + ending*

**Form**

In the present subjunctive, the theme vowel for every conjugation changes; in effect, the first conjugation masquerades as the second conjugation and all the other conjugations take on the appearance of the first.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Theme Vowel</th>
<th>Becomes</th>
<th>Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Conjugation</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>becomes</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd Conjugation</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>becomes</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd Conjugation</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>becomes</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd -io and 4th</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>becomes</td>
<td>ia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some ways to remember this are in the following collapsed table.

**Show**

She wears a giant diamond. We beat a liar. We beat all liars. We eat a friar. Never fear a liar. Let’s eat caviar. She wears a diamond. We eat caviar. We fear a liar. She wears a tiara. We beat a giant. She reads a diary. She wears a diamond tiara. Let’s beat that giant. Few fear Fat Friars. Her Breasts are giant. Clem Steams Clams in Siam

### 36.1.2 Example Conjugation

*porto, portare, portavi, portatus* (1st conjugation - to carry)

**Present Indicative**

This is the present active indicative form of *portare*, which has already been covered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>porto</em></td>
<td><em>portamus</em></td>
<td><em>portat</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>portas</em></td>
<td><em>portatis</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>portat</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>portant</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember the join vowels.

**Present Subjunctive**

The present active subjunctive of *portare* would be conjugated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>portem</em></td>
<td><em>portemus</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>portes</em></td>
<td><em>portetis</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>portet</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>portent</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice:

- The -a- vowel has changed to an -e-.
- The personal endings -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt are used, as is done for regular indicative verbs.

**Present Subjunctive of Esse**

The present active subjunctive of *sum, esse*, the verb "to be", is conjugated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>sim</em></td>
<td><em>simus</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sis</em></td>
<td><em>sitis</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sit</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>sint</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unlike the conjugation of the present active indicative form, the present subjunctive is regular. The same personal endings are affixed to *si*.

*Present Subjunctive of Posse*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possim</td>
<td>possimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possis</td>
<td>possitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possit</td>
<td>possint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translates as... "May (I/You/He/We/You/They) be able"

36.1.3 Imperfect Subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding the personal endings -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt to the present infinitive (often the second principal part). (or passive endings -r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur. In other words, for

\[voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatum\]

The imperfect subjunctives are formed thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocarem</td>
<td>vocaremus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocares</td>
<td>vocaretis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocaret</td>
<td>vocarent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For deponent verbs, whose second principal part is the passive infinitive (e.g., conari, vereri, pati, expediri) a pseudo present infinitive is used (e.g., conare, verere, patere, expedire; although these forms do not exist as stand-alone infinitives, they actually ARE the singular imperatives for these deponent verbs)

The imperfect subjunctive of the verb to be (sum, esse) is conjugated regularly, as are ALL irregular verbs, e.g.: possem, vellem, nollem, ferrem, irem)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>essem</td>
<td>essemus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esses</td>
<td>essetis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esset</td>
<td>essent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36.2 Uses of the Subjunctive

Verbs in the subjunctive mood may assume special meaning in specific constructions.

36.2.1 Volitive or Optative Clauses

Subjunctives in independent clauses are often translated as volitive/optative (that is, as a 'wish'.) Volitves/optatives show an intention for an action to occur; e.g. "amet" may be translated in volitive/optative context as "may he love"
The Subjunctive Mood

Hortatory

A suggestion or command in first person (most often plural); e.g. "cedamus" as an hortatory subjunctive is "let us depart"

Jussive

A suggestion or command in third person; e.g. "cedat" as a jussive subjunctive is "let her depart"; "deprehendatur" = "Let him be seized"

Potential

The potential or possibility of something happening, in any person: (Fortasse) te amem. 'Perhaps I may love you.'

All of these Subjunctive types can be used in an independent (main) clause. Note that all can be translated with 'let' or 'may'; the differences lie in how English will represent the subjunctive verb:

Wish (Volitive): May we be friends forever! Hortatory (Suggestion): Let us be friends! Jussive (Command): Let them be friends! Potential (Possibility): They may be friends; we may be friends; you may be friends.

36.2.2 Purpose Clauses

A purpose clause is a dependent clause used, as the name shows, to show purpose. Often initiated by an indicative verb, the clause contains a subjunctive verb in either the present or imperfect tense. Present and imperfect verbs in purpose clauses should be translated with the auxiliary verbs 'may' and 'might,' respectively. For example, "Marcus urbem condidit ut regeret" should be translated as "Marcus built the city so that he would rule." These appear frequently in Latin.

Category:Latin

http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin
37 The Uses of the Subjunctive

The subjunctive mood has several uses in Latin, the most notable of which are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Person Exhortations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purpose Clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Result Clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Commands</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

37.1 First Person Exhortations (Hortatory Subjunctive)

37.1.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

An exhortation is a statement which expresses a wish. In English, the most common exhortation is "let's go". Other possibilities are "would go", "should go" and "may go". In Latin, these statements are equally as often used and are expressed in the present subjunctive active tense.

37.1.2 Examples

*Festinemus ad forum* - Let's hurry to the forum

*Roma discedamus* - Let's leave Rome

*Roma non discedam, nam mea familia ibi vivit.* - I should not leave Rome, for my family lives there. (Also, "I will not leave" -- the form is ambiguous.)

*Cenemus!* - Let us dine!

*Cenarem tecum si laborem perficerem*\(^1\) - I would dine with you if I should finish my work.

---

\(^1\) Note that in

\(^2\) *si... (if...) clauses, the future perfect is often used where the present is in English. *I shall dine with you if I finish my work* would be *I shall dine with you if I have finished my work*: Tecum cenam si laborem perfeccero.
37.2 Purpose Clauses

37.2.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

A purpose clause is a clause which expresses that someone did something in order that something else might happen. In English they usually contain the words in order to or so that. In Latin this concept is expressed by the words ut and ne followed by the a verb in the subjunctive mood. Ut means "so that" or "in order to" and ne means "lest." In purpose clauses, only forms of the imperfect (following the secondary sequence of tenses) and present (for the primary sequence) are used.

37.2.2 Examples

Quintus donum Scintillae dedit ut eum amaret - Quintus gave Scintilla a gift so that she would love him. (The imperfect subjunctive is used to indicate a 'present/future' time relationship with the perfect main verb, with pluperfect being the only other option, indicating a past time relationship).

Fabius equos domum duxit ne tempestate timerentur - Fabius brought the horses home lest they be frightened by the storm.

Marcus Graeciam fugit ut matrem suam Romae inveniret - Marcus fled Greece to find his mother in Rome.

37.3 Result Clauses

37.3.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

Result clauses state that something occurred as a result of something else happening. For a positive result, use ut. For a negative result, use ut... non.

37.3.2 Examples

Sextus tam iratus erat ut fratrem interficere vellet - Sextus was so angry that he wished to kill his brother.

Horatia tam laeta erat ut lacrimaret - Horatia was so happy that she cried.

Caesar tam potus erat ut Galliam oppugnare non posset - Caesar was so drunk that he couldn't attack Gaul.

Milo tam defessus erat ut in via dormiret - Milo was so tired that he slept on the road.
37.4 Indirect Commands

37.4.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

An indirect command is a statement like the following: 'He ordered her to do x'. The English equivalent words are 'to' or 'that they should'. It can also take the form of 'I am ordering you to do x', as opposed to the imperative 'DO X!'. Several verbs in Latin take the subjunctive mood with indirect commands:

1. rogo, rogare, rogavi, rogatum - to ask
2. persuadeo, persuadere, persuasi, persuasum - to persuade
3. impero, imperare, imperavi, imperatum - to order
4. peto, petere, petivi, petitum - to seek, ask for

These verbs use an ut/ne + the subjunctive construction.

37.4.2 Examples

*Imperator militibus imperavit ut castra caperent* - The general ordered the soldiers to capture the camp.

*Eum rogo ut navem emat* - I am asking him to buy the ship.

*Mater liberis imperavit ne in horto currerent* - The mother asked her children not to run in the garden.

37.5 Indirect questions

37.5.1 Definition, Common Usage and Expression in Latin

The subjunctive is used in indirect questions. For example, the question 'What are you doing?' is direct, while 'He asked what I was doing' is indirect. In Latin, the verb in the clause containing the indirect question must be in the subjunctive.

37.5.2 Examples

*Imperator milites rogat si castra ceperint* - The general asks the soldiers if they captured the camp.

*Eum rogo quid faciat* - I am asking him what he is doing.

*Magister pueros rogat utrum laborent an ludant* - The teacher asks the boys whether they are working or playing.

37.6 Note bene!
38 The Subjunctive Imperfect

The conjugation of the subjunctive imperfect active follows a simple rule. The verb in its infinitive form, that is, the second principle part, (amare, to love, for example) simply has the subjunctive endings appended onto it as follows:

ego amarem
tu amares
is amaret
nos amaremus
vos amaretis
ei amarent

the passive voice is formed by the addition of passive voice endings onto the infinitive stem

ego amarer

tu amareris

is amaretur

nos amaremur

vos amaremini

ei amarentur

38.1 Application

The imperfect subjunctive is only used for complex syntactic constructions; cum clauses and indirect questions and the like. Rarely, if ever, does it stand alone.

38.1.1 Because/Cum

One application is in its use of 'cum' in the sense of 'because' as a clause. e.g.

Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non posse, Helvetii se in montem receperunt.

When(Because) the Helvetis could not sustain/resist our attacks for long, they retreated to the mountains.
The Subjunctive Imperfect

Category:Latin

39 The Subjunctive Passive Verbs

39.1 Passive Subjunctive System

Having examined Lessons 15 and 23, forming the passive subjunctive should be quite simple.

39.1.1 Present

Modify the verb stem appropriately with a vowel change (as learned in Lesson 15), then add the present passive endings (Lesson 23).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb stem</th>
<th>present active</th>
<th>subjunctive</th>
<th>present passive</th>
<th>subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parer</td>
<td>manear</td>
<td>regar</td>
<td>capiar</td>
<td>audiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pareris</td>
<td>manearis</td>
<td>regaris</td>
<td>capiariis</td>
<td>audiares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paretur</td>
<td>maneatur</td>
<td>regatur</td>
<td>capiatur</td>
<td>audiatur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paremur</td>
<td>maneamur</td>
<td>regamur</td>
<td>capiamur</td>
<td>audiamur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paremini</td>
<td>maneamini</td>
<td>regamini</td>
<td>capiamini</td>
<td>audiamini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parentur</td>
<td>maneantur</td>
<td>regantur</td>
<td>capiamentur</td>
<td>audiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

39.1.2 Imperfect

The passive endings added to the present active infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb stem</th>
<th>present active</th>
<th>subjunctive</th>
<th>present passive</th>
<th>subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pararer</td>
<td>manerer</td>
<td>regerer</td>
<td>caperer</td>
<td>audirer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parareris</td>
<td>manereris</td>
<td>regereris</td>
<td>capereris</td>
<td>audireris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paretur</td>
<td>maneretur</td>
<td>regeretur</td>
<td>caperetur</td>
<td>audiretur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paremur</td>
<td>maneremur</td>
<td>regeremur</td>
<td>caperemur</td>
<td>audiremur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paremini</td>
<td>maneremini</td>
<td>regeremini</td>
<td>caperemini</td>
<td>audiremini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parentur</td>
<td>manerentur</td>
<td>regerentur</td>
<td>caperentur</td>
<td>audirentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Category:Latin

---

1 http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin

183
40 The Subjunctive Perfects

The conjugation of the perfect subjunctive active consists of: the perfect stem + "eri" + the standard active endings (-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt). An example conjugation of the first conjugation verb paro, parāre is as follows:

parāverim
parāverīs
parāverit
parāverīmus
parāverītis
parāverint

The conjugation of the pluperfect subjunctive active consists of: the perfect stem + "isse" + the standard active endings. An example conjugation of the first conjugation verb paro, parāre is as follows:

parāvissem
parāvisses
parāvisset
parāvissemus
parāvissetis
parāvissent
The Subjunctive Perfects

Category:Latin\(^1\)

\(^1\) \url{http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin}
41 The Subjunctive Perfect Passive Verbs
42 Subjunctive Passive Verbs

42.1 Subjunctive Passive Perfect

Subjunctive passive verbs form from the 4th principle part as shown in the example below.

The verb's third principle part, e.g. in the word impedire(to obstruct): impedio, impedire, *impedivi*, impeditus; gains the passive ending for the appropriate person.

This is an example of the Subjunctive Passive in the perfect tense. muto, mutare, mutavi, mutatum -- to change

To make the verb into a perfect passive, take the fourth principle part, make it agree with the subject in gender, number, and case, and then add in the appropriate form of esse. In the perfect, we use the present form of esse, and specifically the subjunctive present(sim, sis, sit, simus, sitis, sint.)

For example, Do you know what has been done to him? would be made into: *scis quid eum factum sit?*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mutatus sim</td>
<td>I have been changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutatus sis</td>
<td>You have been changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutatus sit</td>
<td>He has been changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural*</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mutati simus</td>
<td>We have been changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutati sitis</td>
<td>You have been changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutati sint</td>
<td>They have been changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Note well that in the plural, the word "mutatus" becomes "mutati," thus taking on the plural nominative. Remember that the perfect passive verbs require the fourth participle to agree in gender and number!

42.1.1 Exercises

In this section, it is only truly necessary to translate the italicized portion. The rest exists in order to make the subjunctive necessary.

the children were so bad that they *have been scolded.* (Children- Liberi; To scold- vitupero, vituperare, vituperavi)
He asked how I was tricked.(trick-ludo, ludere, lusi, lusus)

My parents drove to town so that now I have been born in a hospital.(born- cresco, crescere, crevi, cretus; Hospital- valetudinarium, valetudinarii-n.)

### 42.2 Subjunctive Passive Pluperfect

The subjunctive passive pluperfect is very similar to the perfect, with the major difference being the way esse is conjugated. In specific, the word esse is simply given the active endings(m,s,t,mus,tis, nt)

mutavi + isse -->

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutatus essem</td>
<td>I had been changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutatus esses</td>
<td>You had been changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutatus esset</td>
<td>He had been changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutati essemus</td>
<td>We had been changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutati essetis</td>
<td>You had been changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutati essent</td>
<td>They had been changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Category:Latin

#### 42.2.1 Exercises

In these exercises, only the italicized parts require translation. The rest exist to make the subjunctive necessary. Remember, the subjunctive is not used in any but complex sentences or other rare circumstances.

Ovid wrote so much in the Metamorphoses that his hand had been changed into stone.
43 The Gerund and Participles
44 Participles

**Participles** are verbs which function grammatically like adjectives. English, aided by auxiliary participles, is able have participle phrases in many tenses. Latin has participles that do not have auxiliary supplementary participles. This limits the usage of the participle in Latin, according to some wiki-scholars of Classical Studies.

Example 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>(the) walking</th>
<th>man</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>ambulans</td>
<td>vir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>Present Substantive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44.1 Present Active Participles

Present participles are formed by adding -ns to the stem of the verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjugation</th>
<th>Infinitive:</th>
<th>Stem:</th>
<th>Present Imperfect Participle:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>amare</td>
<td>ama</td>
<td>amans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>monere</td>
<td>mone</td>
<td>monens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>regere</td>
<td>rege</td>
<td>regens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>audire</td>
<td>audi</td>
<td>audiens</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Present Participles are declined like 3rd declension adjectives. In cases besides the nominative, the -s becomes -t.

Examples:

1. ferens, ferentis
2. capiens, capientis
3. ens, entis

44.1.1 Exercises

Form the Present Participle and translate of the following Latin verbs:
Participles

- meto, messui, messum, ere
- metuo, metum, ui, ere
- milito, avi, atum, are
- postulo, avi, atum, are
- sulco, avi, sulcum, are
- iacio, ieci, iactum, ere

44.1.2 Uses

The examples will show participles of the verb *amo, amare, amavi, amatum* (to love).

- **present active**: base + 'ns.' This forms a two-termination 3rd declension adjective. In the case of *amare*, the participle is *amans, amantis* (loving).
- **perfect passive**: fourth principle part, with appropriate first or second declension endings: *amatus, -a, -um*.
- **future active**: fourth principle part, minus 'm', add 'rus, -a, -um' This forms a 1st-2nd declension adjective: *amaturus, -a, -um* (about to love).

In deponent verbs, the perfect passive participle is formed in the same way as in regular verbs. However, since the nature of the deponent verb is passive in form and active in meaning, the participle is translated actively.

Remember that participles are adjectives, and therefore must be declined to agree with the noun which they modify in case, number and gender.

44.2 Gerund

The gerund is a verbal noun which is used to refer to the **action** of a verb. For example: *ars scribendi* = the art of **writing**. The gerund is declined as a second declension neuter noun. It is formed by adding the thematic vowel used in the imperfect and then -ndum.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amo, amare</td>
<td>amandum</td>
<td>video, videre</td>
<td>rego, regere</td>
<td>capio, capere</td>
<td>audio, audire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>capiendum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiendum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Participles

Meanings of the gerund

- Genitive: ars legendi - The art of reading / to read
- Accusative: ad puniendum - to punish, for punishing
- Ablative: saepe canendo - through frequently singing; in legendo: while reading
- Ablative with *causa*: puniendi causa - in order to punish

44.3 Gerundive

The gerundive is a 1st/2nd declension adjective formed the same way as the gerund, and its function overlaps somewhat with the gerund, but otherwise differs. The literal translation of the gerundive is with "to be", eg. defendendus, -a, -um = "to be defended".

- Accusative: ad ludos fruendos - to the games to be enjoyed - to enjoy the games (Note that if this were a gerund construction, it would be ad ludis fruendum since fruor, -i takes the ablative case. In the gerundive construction, both noun and gerundive are governed by the preposition *ad*)
- Gerundive of obligation: Carthago delenda est - Carthage is to be destroyed - Carthage must be destroyed. Note that if there is an object (eg. Carthage is to be destroyed *by us*), it goes into the dative case.
45 Exercises

1. Convert the following subjunctive purpose clauses into gerund or gerundive clauses with the same meaning. For example: militabat ut patriam defenderet -> militabat ad patriam defendendum or militabat patriam defendendi causa or militabat ad patriam defendendam. Try to use each construction twice.

- casam exit ut patrem adiuvet
- mater in casam rediit ut cenam pararet
- hostes vincebant ergo scutum abieci (I threw away my shield) ut celerius fugerem
- in silvas currimus ut nos celemus
- hostes in silvas ineunt ut nos invenire
- Brutus Iulium Caesarem occidit ut Romam liberaret

2. Translate into Latin. For example: I must see the temple -> templum mihi videndum est

- We must build a large city.
- Julius Caesar must lead an army into Greece.
- Scipio (Scipio, -ionis) must defeat Hannibal.

Category:Latin

---

46 Conditional Clauses

46.1 Conditional Clauses

Conditional clauses in English and Latin have the general form:

\textbf{if} (condition clause) (result clause)

Or:

(result clause) \textbf{if} (condition clause)

For example:

1. If I see anyone, I'll tell you.
2. If he was sleeping, you should not have knocked.
3. I cannot hear you if I'm sleeping.
4. I would have been sad if I had not won.

There are 3 types of conditional clauses in Latin:

1. Simple Fact (Present or Past)
2. Contrary to Fact (Present or Past)
3. Future (More or Less Vivid)

46.1.1 Simple Fact Conditionals

Simple fact conditionals in Latin have the general form:

\textit{si} (condition clause in the present indicative) (result clause in the present indicative)

Or:

\textit{si} (condition clause in the imperfect/perfect indicative) (result clause in the imperfect/perfect indicative)

\textbf{For example:}

\textit{si} diligenter laboras, \textit{bonus} puer \textit{es}

If you are working diligently, you are a good boy.

\textit{si dominum adiuvabas, bonus} servus \textit{eras}

If you were helping your master, you were a good slave.
46.1.2 Contrary to Fact Conditionals

Contrary to fact conditionals are used if the condition clause is known to be false. For example:

If you weren’t playing during class, you would be a good boy (but you were playing, so you aren’t a good boy).

Contrary to fact conditionals have the general form:
si (condition clause in the imperfect subjunctive) (result clause in the imperfect subjunctive)
Or:
si (condition clause in the pluperfect subjunctive) (result clause in the pluperfect subjunctive)

For example:

si matrem adiuvaret, cena parata esset
If he were helping his mother, the dinner would be ready.
si patrem adiuvisset, pater matrem adiware potuisset
If he had helped his father, his father would have been able to help his mother.

Note how English uses would and would have for result clauses, while Latin uses the same tense as in the condition clauses.

46.1.3 Future Conditionals

Future conditionals are, of course, used to express conditions in the future. For example:

If you help me, I will be done faster.

Future conditionals take the following general form:
si (condition clause in the future or future perfect) (result clause in the future)
Or:
si (condition clause in the present subjunctive) (result clause in the present subjunctive)

For example:

si fortiter pugnaveritis, urbs non delebitur
If you fight bravely, the city will not be destroyed.

Note how English uses the present tense for the condition clause, while Latin uses the future or future perfect.
si diligenter laboretis, vobis meridie domum dimittam
If you were to work diligently, I would dismiss you at noon.

This type of clause, known as the future less vivid (as opposed to the future more vivid which uses the future and future perfect), is used to express more improbable conditions in the future.
Passive/Subjunctive Tenses

Passive is used to describe something like an indirect action affects you - an example is 'I was being held'. In Latin, it is conjugated through six parts - the present set (present, imperfect, future), and the perfect set (perfect, pluperfect, future perfect). Below is a chart you can use for endings and such.

The present tense through future tenses use the present stem. I'm using the word amo, amare, amavi, amatus - to love, so the present stem is 'am'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>1st person</th>
<th>2nd person</th>
<th>3rd person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amāris</td>
<td>amātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāmur</td>
<td>amāminī</td>
<td>amāntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>amābar</td>
<td>amābāris</td>
<td>amābātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābāmur</td>
<td>amābāminī</td>
<td>amābāntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>amābor</td>
<td>amāberis</td>
<td>amābitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābimur</td>
<td>amābimīnī</td>
<td>amābuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>amātus, a, um sum</td>
<td>amātī, ae, a sumus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus es</td>
<td>amātī estis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus est</td>
<td>amātī sunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>amātus, a, um eram</td>
<td>amātī, ae, a eramus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātās erās</td>
<td>amātī erātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātās erat</td>
<td>amātī erant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>amātus, a, um erō</td>
<td>amātī, ae, a erimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātī eris</td>
<td>amātī eritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātī erit</td>
<td>amātī erunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hope this is all correct and helps!

Category:Latin\(^1\)

\(^1\) [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin)
48 Idioms

- ad unum-to a man
- aequo animo-contentedly, resignedly, patiently
- aere alieno premi-to be heavily in debt
- agere gratias-to thank
- alius aliam in partem-one in one direction, another in another
- amico aliquo uti-to be on terms of intimacy with some one
- animo tenus commoveri-to be moved to the heart
Lesson 20, as a bit of a reward is a little translation exercise from the Gospel of Saint Luke.

Exercise 1

Vocabulary:

coming soon, at the moment consult your dictionary

Respondens Simon dixit: "Aestimo quia is, cui plus donavit". At ille dixit ei: "Recte iudicasti". Et conversus ad mulierem, dixit Simoni: "Vides hanc mulierem? Intravi in domum tuam: aquam pedibus meis non dedisti; haec autem lacrimis rigavit pedes meos et capillis suis tersit. Osculum mihi non dedisti haec autem, ex quo intravi non cessavit osculari pedes meos. Oleo caput meum non unxisti; haec autem unguento unxit pedes meos. Propter quod dico tibi: Remissa sunt peccata eius multa, quoniam dilexit multum: cui autem minus dimittitur, minus diligit." Dixit autem ad illam: "Remissa sunt peccata tua". Et coeperunt, qui simul accumbebant, dicere intra se: "quis est hic, qui etiam peccata dimittit?". Dixit autem ad mulierem: Fides tua te salvam fecit; vade in pace!.

Et factum est deinceps, et ipse iter faciebat per civitatem et castellum, oaeducabat et evangelizans regnum Dei, et Duodecim cum illo, et mulieres aliquae, quae erant curatae ab spiritibus malignis et infirmitatibus, Maria, quae vocatur Magdalene, de qua daemonia septem exierant, et Ioanna uxor Chuza procuratoris Herodis, et Sussanna et aliae multae, quae ministrabant eis de facultatibus suis.

Category:Latin

---

Haec est fabula De Faciebus Iani. Ianus, ut dicebatur, erat unus deorum, cui facies duae erant. Altera earum enim in futura et altera in praeterita prospiciebat.

Apollo ei olim sic dixit: "Nonne tibi facies est, qua tempus praesens spectes?" Et paulo post Ianus ita respondit:

"Mundus - orbis terrarum cyclus est similiter ac tempus est cyclicum. Et initium omnium et finem video. Omnia prospicio aeternusque sum, neque opus est porro videre, quae palam iacet."

Diu cogitavit Apollo de verbis Iani hominesque acutissimā mente in omni orbe terrarum conquaesivit eo consilio, ut ipse tam sapiens ut Ianus fieret. Postea cum quibusdam illustrissimis viris collocutus est, quo sapientior esset. Eo facto tamen unus eorum, cui Minervus nomen, Apollinem monuit, ne summam quaereret sapientiam, quam novisse nullum alium quam Ianum oportebat. Revenit autem Apollo ad Ianum eumque, ut veritatem cognosceret, ea summa rogavit.

"Intellegisne omnino quid roges?" inquit Ianus, "Si dis par fueris, omnibus iuribus privari possis."

Itaque Apollo cognovit sapientissimum omnium fuisse, a quo monitus est.

Translation below:

This is the story of the faces of Janus. Janus, as it used to be said, was one of the gods who had two faces. It was that one spied into the future while the other into the past.

Apollo once had said to him, "Have you not a face with which to see the present?" After a few moments, thus spoke Ianus:

"The world is a circle. Time is a circle. I see both the beginning and end of all living things. I am foreseeing and eternal; therefore, it is not necessary for me to see that which is lying out of sight."

Apollo thought about these words for a very long time, and thus, that he might become wise like Janus, he sought the keenest minds of the land. He then was speaking with some great men that he might become wiser. However, one, whose name was Minervus, warned him not to seek the ultimate/highest truth because it may only be known by Janus. But he returned again to ask Janus that he might obtain the truth.

"Do you even know for what you're asking? If you enter onto the same level (of the Gods), all your rights might be snatched from you," said Janus.

And so Apollo knows now that the same man who had warned him was the wisest of all.
51 Verse from the Gospels

< Latin

51.1 A Verse From the Gospel of St. Luke

Respondens Simon dixit: "Aestimo quia is, cui plus donavit". At ille dixit ei: "Recte iudicasti". Et conversus ad mulierem, dixit Simoni: "Vides hanc mulierem? Intravi in domum tuam: aquam pedibus meis non dedisti; haec autem lacrimis rigavit pedes meos et capillis suis tersit. Osculum mihi non dedisti haec autem, ex quo intravi non cessavit osculari pedes meos. Oleo caput meum non unxisti; haec autem unguento unxit pedes meos. Propter quod dico tibi: Remissa sunt peccata eius multa, quoniam dilexit multrum: cui autem minus dimittit, minus diligit." Dixit autem ad illam: "Remissa sunt peccata tua". Et coeperunt, qui simul accumbebant, dicere intra se: "quis est hic, qui etiam peccata dimittit?". Dixit autem ad mulierem: Fides tua te salvam fecit; vade in pace!".

Category:Latin

51.2 Chapter 5: Review


52 Revision
53 What is Latin?

*Parts of this introduction were taken from The Latin Language*¹ on the Wikipedia².

Latin was the language originally spoken in the region around the city of Rome called Latium. It gained great importance as the formal language of the Roman Empire.

All Romance languages descend from a Latin parent, and many words in English³ and other languages today are based on Latin roots. Moreover, Latin was a *lingua franca*, the learned language for scientific and political affairs in Europe, for more than one and a half thousand years, being eventually replaced by French⁴ in the 18th century and English by the middle of the 20th. Latin remains the formal language of the Roman Catholic Church to this day, and as such is the official national language of the Vatican.

Romance languages are not derived from Classical Latin, the language spoken by Caesar and Cicero, but rather from Vulgar Latin, the language spoken by the common people, or *vulgus*, of Rome. Classical Latin and Vulgar Latin (Romance) differ (for example) in that Romance had distinctive stress whereas Classical had distinctive length of vowels. In Italian⁵ and Sardo logudorese, there is distinctive length of consonants and stress, in Spanish⁶ only distinctive stress, and in French even stress is no longer distinctive.

Another major distinction between Classical and Romance is that modern Romance languages, excluding Romanian⁷, have lost their case endings (suffixes at the end of the word used in place of prepositions) in most words (some pronouns being exceptions). Romanian is still equipped with several cases (though some, notably the ablative, are no longer represented).

It is also important to note that Latin is, for the most part, an inflected language — meaning that the endings change to show how the word is being used in the sentence.

---

1  http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latin  
2  http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Main%20Page  
3  http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/English  
4  http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/French  
5  http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Italian  
6  http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Spanish  
7  http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Romanian
54 Introduction to the Latin Language

54.1 Simple and Compound Words

In Latin, words are either:

- **simple** (words that consist of only one part). For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eo</td>
<td>I go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fero</td>
<td>I carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>I give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **compound** (words that consist of more than one part, for example, a root word combined with a prefix). For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abeo</td>
<td>I go away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transfero</td>
<td>I carry across</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reddo</td>
<td>I give back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

54.2 Word Parts

Inflected words (i.e., words having ending- or spelling-changes according to their grammatical functions in the sentence) have a **stem** and a **root**.

The Stem

The stem is the part of the word to which various suffixes are added. The final suffix determines either the role of the word in the sentence (for example, when a Roman slave wished to address his *dominus* (master), he used the vocative form *domine* -- equivalent to 'O master' in English) or the person involved in the action (for example, 'I dominate' may be expressed as 'domin-or', and 'they dominate' as 'domin-antur*). In these cases, *domin-* is the stem and *-us, -e, -or* and *-antur* are suffixes. The addition of such suffixes is called *inflection*. This is discussed further in the Summary¹.

The Root

The root is the part of the word that carries the essential meaning. For example the stem of *agito* (I drive onward) is *agit-* , whose root is *ag* (do, drive), which is in common to words of

---

¹ Chapter 56 on page 221
similar meaning: *ago* (I do, drive), *agmen* (that which is driven, such as a flock), etc. Notice the essential difference between a root and a stem. To the root 'ag' has been added a suffix '(i)to-' which denotes frequency of action (so 'agit-' means to do or drive more than once, hence "agit-o", I agitate, I keep (something) moving, I urge, I impel).

In contrast, English uses word order more than inflection to determine the function of a word within a sentence. English also uses words like pronouns (I, she, etc.) and prepositions (to, at, etc.) where Latin generally prefers inflexions. Thus "dom-i" (noun -- "at home"), 'ag-unt' (verb -- "they do/drive").

Primitives

Primitives occur when both the stem and the root are the same. For example, in the word *agere* (to do, drive) both the stem and the root are the same: "ag-".

Derivatives

Derivatives occur when the root or stem is modified. For example, the stem *flamm-* from the noun *flamma* has the root 'flag' ("blaze"), "nosco" (I know) from the verb "noscere" has the root *gno-* ("know").

Suffixes

Latin attaches suffixes ('endings') to stems to turn them into words (most stems and roots cannot be used in sentences without an ending). This inflection is essential to forming Latin sentences. The various suffixes and their translations will be learned in the later lessons.
55 Types of Words used in Latin

55.1 Nouns

A noun (Latin: *nomen*) is "something perceived or conceived by the mind."

There are two kinds of nouns: Substantives and Pronouns.

1. Substantive (*nomen substantivum*) is a name simply denoting something perceived or conceived: *psittacus* - the parrot, *nix* - the snow, *virtus* - virtue.

2. Pronoun (*pronomen*) is a word used in place of a *substantivum*, usually when the *substantivum* is already known: *ea* - she, *ille* - that man

Nouns have changing endings on the stem (known as declension) and three incidents: number, gender and case. Number concerns whether the thing referred to is singular or plural (and the ending shows this); gender classifies a substantive as masculine, feminine or neuter (this determines how the endings of adjectives and pronouns behave) and case (where the ending must show how the noun fits in to the sentence). Adjectives and Pronouns must agree in all incidents when they refer to a substantive.

55.2 Verbs

Verbs (*verba*) express an action or a state of being, e.g., *ago* (I do), *dixit* (he said), *venis* (you come). 'Conjugation' is the term for adding inflections to verb stems to indicate person (first, second or third), number (singular or plural), tense (present, future, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect or future perfect), voice (active or passive), and mood (indicative, subjunctive or imperative).

A verb can be either *finite* or *infinite*:

1. Finite verbs (*verba finita*) are inflected and have a subject, e.g., I run, you run, he runs, they drive, the computer is turned on.

2. The infinite verbs (*verba infinita*) are not inflected and have no subject, e.g. to run, to drive, to turn on, to have drawn. *Participles*, which are inflected as substantives rather than as verbs, may also be considered infinite, e.g., the *running* boy.
55.3 Modifiers

1. Adjectives (adjectiva) are used to describe nouns. They indicate a quality perceived or conceived as inherent in, or attributed to, something denoted. E.g., *vir magnus* (the great man), *puella pulchra* (the fair girl)

2. Adverbs (adverbia) are similar to adjectives, except that they are used to qualify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs, rather than nouns. In practice, they restrict the meaning of the verb or adjective by specifying how or how much. E.g., *curro celeriter* (I run quickly), *pugnat fortiter* (he fights bravely), "vere jucundus est" (he's really nice”), "incredibile callida est” (she’s incredibly clever).

55.4 Other

Particles are uninflected words that provide extra meaning.

1. Prepositions (praepositiones) are little words which tell you how one thing (noun) is behaving in relation to another thing ("the duck was near the pond", "she went towards the wood"). In Latin, the noun that follows a preposition takes a particular ending (called a 'case'), depending on the nature of the relationship, or on the nature of the preposition itself. E.g., *ad* (by), *in* (in), *sub* (under). What all this means is that a preposition is a sort of adverb, telling you how something is done. For example, "you go" is a simple statement, but 'you go in' suggests that you don't just 'go', you go so as to enter something, and so you need a noun for the 'something'. In English, we might say 'you go into the house'. In Latin, this would be: 'in domum inis'. Notice the form 'in domum', which means "into" the house -- you're going into it, you're not yet exactly inside it (the ending -um of 'domum' is called 'accusative'). When you are inside the house, what you do is 'in' the house, which is 'in domo' (the ending -o of 'domo' is called 'ablative').

2. Conjunctions (coniunctiones) join together clauses and sentences. E.g., *et* (and), *atque* (as well as), *sed* (but).

3. Interjections (interiectiones) are exclamations used to express feeling or to gain attention. E.g., *o!* (oh!) *ehue!* ( alas!) *ecce!* ( behold!)

55.5 Articles

Latin has NO articles (words for 'the' and 'a'). When translating Latin into English, insert a 'the' or 'a' when appropriate.
56 Summary

Parts of Speech

Inflected
Substantives: things perceived or conceived
Adjectives: indicate a quality perceived or conceived as inherent of something in the substantive
Pronouns: nouns used in place of substantives and adjectives
Verbs: mark the beginning of an independent clause\(^1\). The verb in Latin is inflected so that we know the subject ("I learn"), and its tense (to what general or specific time the clause relates to). We call the inflection of a verb conjugation

Uninflected
Adverbs: describe adjectives, verbs, and other adverbs
Prepositions: help nouns define their relations to other nouns
Conjunctions: Join clauses and sentences
Interjection: exclamation

56.1 Pronunciation

Latin pronunciation has varied somewhat over the course of its long history, and there are some differences between Classical Latin, as spoken in the Roman Republic and Roman Empire, and Medieval or Ecclesiastical Latin, as spoken in the Middle ages and in the Catholic Church. This text focuses on the classical pronunciation.

\(\text{a} /\text{a}/, \text{about, between ah and uh, ad is pronounced almost like } \text{"odd"}\)
\(\text{e} /\text{ɛ}/, \text{get or bed}\)
\(\text{i} /\text{i}/, \text{hit, pin, in}\)
\(\text{i} \text{ (Before vowel and not accented) } /\text{j}/, \text{Y as in yes}\)
\(\text{j} \text{ Sometimes used in place of the letter I when making a } /\text{j}/ \text{ sound, as above}\)
\(\text{o} /\text{ɔ}/, \text{on, cot}\)
\(\text{u} /\text{ʊ}/, \text{put, foot}\)
\(\text{a} /\text{a}/, \text{father}\)
\(\text{æ} \text{ sounds like saying the letter } \text{"A"}, /\text{ɛ}/, \text{hay}\)
\(\text{ɪ} \text{ sounds like saying the letter } \text{"E"}, /\text{ɪ}/, \text{eat}\)
\(\text{ø} \text{ sounds like saying the letter } \text{"O"}, /\text{ø}/, \text{clover}\)
\(\text{æ} \text{ (Diphthong) sounds like saying the letter } \text{"I"}, /\text{ar}/, \text{aisle}\)

\(^1\) http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/clause
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>au</strong></td>
<td>(Diphthong) /aʊ/, brown, how</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>oe</strong></td>
<td>(Diphthong) /ɔɪ/, oil, boy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ou</strong></td>
<td>(Diphthong) oo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ui</strong></td>
<td>(Diphthong) we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bs</strong></td>
<td>(At the end of word) the B sounds a P</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bt</strong></td>
<td>(At the end of a word) the B sounds a P</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ch</strong></td>
<td>/kʰ/, pronounced separately as in archaic, not like in church</td>
<td>archaic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gn</strong></td>
<td>/nŋn/, hangnail, sing now</td>
<td>hangnail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ph</strong></td>
<td>hill, never sounds an F in philosophy</td>
<td>hill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>th</strong></td>
<td>Pronounced separately as in pot hole, never like this or theater</td>
<td>pot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>c</strong></td>
<td>/k/, always hard as in cat</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>g</strong></td>
<td>/g/, always hard as in get, never soft like adage</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>r</strong></td>
<td>Rolled like in the Spanish and Italian languages</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>s</strong></td>
<td>Always voiceless as in see, never voiced as in ease</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>v</strong></td>
<td>/w/, equivalent to an English W, never sounding an English V (sounds U as a consonant), some texts will write the 'v' as a &quot;u&quot; when it serves as a vowel</td>
<td>world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>x</strong></td>
<td>Equivalent to an English Ks as in box, never like exert</td>
<td>box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(y)</td>
<td>Rarely exists in Latin except in words borrowed from Greek</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(z)</td>
<td>Rarely exists in Latin except in words borrowed from Greek</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that Latin, as written by the Romans, did not include macrons (the longmarks over long vowels) or the letters J and U. Macrons are used today as pronunciation guides and do not necessarily need to be written. The sound value of the letter U was filled by the letter V, which sounded either /w/ or /ʊ/ depending on context. Modern texts often preserve the V when it is making a /w/ sound and change it to a U when making a /ʊ/ sound. The letter J is sometimes used in modern times (this Wikibook not included) when the letter I is being used in diphthongs.

### 56.2 Declension Tables

The following tables will be both referenced and explained in all of the following sections, and hence are placed here.
Declension Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular Nouns</th>
<th>Declension (Gender)</th>
<th>1st (F)</th>
<th>2nd (M/N)</th>
<th>3rd (M/F/N)</th>
<th>4th (M/N)</th>
<th>5th (F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servus</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect Object</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct Address</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servae</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note that nouns in the 3rd declension nominative can have any ending, hence why none is given in bold.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural Nouns</th>
<th>Declension (Gender)</th>
<th>1st (F)</th>
<th>2nd (M/N)</th>
<th>3rd (M/F/N)</th>
<th>4th (M/N)</th>
<th>5th (F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>pueillae</td>
<td>servī</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
56.3 Grammar Part 1: Nouns and Their Role in Sentences

Nouns in Latin are inflected\(^2\), which means that endings (also known as suffixes or *suffixes*) are appended to the end of the stem\(^5\) to denote these things:

1. Number (whether the noun is singular or plural)
2. Case\(^6\) of the noun (role of the noun in the sentence)
3. Gender\(^7\) (the gender of the word - one of masculine, feminine, or neuter)

Most nouns in English can be modified to indicate number (cat versus cats), and many pronouns can be modified to indicate case (who versus whose) or gender (he versus she, his versus hers). Case is especially important in Latin as meaning cannot be determined by word order as it can be in English, but purely by word endings, or "inflection". Indeed, the words in a Latin sentence can appear in almost any order with little change in meaning. Two sentences with the word orders "Sam ate the orange" and "The orange ate Sam" could potentially mean the same thing in Latin, though the spellings of "orange" and "Sam" would have to change slightly to denote which was the subject (the one eating) and which was the object (the one being eaten).

It is important to note here that although the genders of many words make sense (for example, "puella", meaning a girl, is feminine) many are simply assigned and hold no real meaning. Luckily, as you will find, the gender can often be determined by the spelling of the word (words ending in "us" are almost always masculine, and words ending in "a" are almost always feminine). For many words, however, you will simply have to memorize their gender.

Adjectives\(^8\) themselves must match the number, case, and gender of the noun (be it a substantive or a pronoun) they modify. If a noun is nominative singular feminine (see case table\(^9\) below), then the adjective describing it must also be nominative singular feminine. If the noun is accusative plural masculine, then the adjective must be accusative plural masculine. This will be expanded on in the Adjectives\(^10\) section below. The advantage of this system is that adjectives do not need to be adjacent to their respective nouns, as one would be able to tell which noun they modify by which noun they appear to agree with.

56.3.1 Declension

All substantives are part of one of 5 categories, called *declensions*. Each declension has a set of standard suffixes that indicate case and number. Usually gender is indicated by the suffix, although there are many exceptions. Therefore, you must memorize the gender of every substantive you learn.

---

\(^1\) Chapter 56.3.2 on page 227
\(^2\) http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Noun
\(^3\) http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inflected%20language
\(^4\) http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/suffix
\(^5\) http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inflected%20language
\(^6\) http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cases
\(^7\) http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grammatical%20gender
\(^8\) http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adjective
\(^9\) Chapter 56.4 on page 229
\(^10\) Chapter 56.4 on page 229
By familiarizing yourself with the above tables\(^{11}\), you could deduce that originally the suffix indicating number, case, and gender was the same for every noun. However, as the language developed, nouns with a common stem formed declensions and sounds changed. Similar processes happen continually over time, even today.

The above tables allow you to familiarize yourself with the existence of each declension, though by no means are you expected to memorize it now. Nonetheless, you will have to memorize it as you are formally introduced to individual cases and declensions in future lessons. Because of its introductory purpose, it is considerably simplified and incomplete, and therefore should not be used as a reference in the future.

Adjectives are also classed into declensions:

1. **1st/2nd declension adjectives...**
   a) ...Use 1st declension suffixes from the substantive declension table when describing feminine nouns.
   b) ...Use 2nd declension masculine suffixes from the above table when describing masculine nouns.
   c) ...Use 2nd declension neuter suffixes (*not found in the above table*) when describing neuter nouns.

2. **3rd declension adjectives** behave as 'i' stem substantives unless specified. Masculine and Feminine suffixes (which are the same) will be used if describing masculine and feminine nouns, and Neuter suffixes will be used when describing neuter nouns.

Pronouns are not part of any declension, as they are all irregular, and simply have to be memorized.

56.3.2 Case

Cases (Latin: *casus*) determine the role of the noun in the sentence in relation to other parts of the sentence.

There are six cases, Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative and Ablative. Vocative (Lesson 3) can be considered a sort of miniature case, generally not being accepted as a true one. Additionally, some nouns have a locative case, which will be covered later. As nominative and accusative are the most basic, these will be taught first (the rest will be covered in later lessons).

**The Use of the Cases**

*(all words in bold are in the case specified in the first column)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Role in sentence</th>
<th>Example (Latin)</th>
<th>Example (English)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Subject (performs the verb)</td>
<td><em>Vir</em> <em>lupum vult.</em></td>
<td><em>The man</em> wants a wolf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Description and possession</td>
<td><em>Lupus</em> <em>virī</em> est.</td>
<td><em>It is the man's</em> wolf/It is the wolf <em>of the man.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

\(^{11}\) Chapter 56.2 on page 222
The Use of the Cases
(all words in bold are in the case specified in the first column)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Role in sentence</th>
<th>Example (Latin)</th>
<th>Example (English)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>Indirect object</td>
<td>Lupō dedit vir.</td>
<td>The man gave to the wolf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(receives the direct object)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Direct object (receives the action of the verb)</td>
<td>Vir lupum videt.</td>
<td>The man sees the wolf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>Various (modify or limit nouns by ideas of where, when, how, etc.)</td>
<td>Α quō datum? Α virō.</td>
<td>By whom given? By a man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>Direct address (speaking to somebody directly)</td>
<td>Salve, Brute!</td>
<td>Hello, Brutus!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56.3.3 Gender

All substantives, including inanimate objects, have a particular gender (genera), which is either masculine, feminine, or neuter.

For example, Vir, "a man," is masculine. Marītus, "a husband," is also masculine. Puella, "a girl," is feminine. Māter, "a mother," is feminine. Even inanimate objects are assigned gender, including all the moons, stars, trees, tools, and so forth. Logic will give you little help in determining what the genders of inanimate objects are, and with many nouns memorization is required. Luckily, for many nouns, the spelling of the word indicates the gender.

Certain rules may be utilized to determine the gender of an inanimate substantive. Declension is a good indication of gender, especially for 1st and 2nd declension substantives. 1st declension substantives (substantives with an -a suffix) are usually feminine and second declension nouns (substantives with an -us suffix) are usually masculine or neuter. There are a few exceptions, and they will have to be learned. 3rd declension nouns can be either masculine, feminine or neuter (thus the gender will often have to be memorized). 4th declension nouns are usually masculine, sometimes neuter while 5th declension nouns are usually feminine.

1st/2nd declension adjectives alternate the set of endings depending on the gender of noun it describes (see above: Agreement of the Gender of Nouns and the Adjective). If the adjective describes a feminine noun, the adjective must use 1st declension endings, if the adjective describes a masculine noun, the adjective must use 2nd declension masculine endings, if the adjective describes a neuter noun the adjective must use 2nd declension neuter endings.

3rd declension adjectives use the same set of endings for masculine and feminine nouns. However, a slightly different set of endings are used when describing neuter nouns.
56.4 Adjectives

As stated above, adjectives must match the gender, number, and case of the noun (be the noun a substantive, or a pronoun) they modify. However, there are many occasions where logic cannot be used to determine the gender of inanimate objects, as genders are assigned arbitrarily when the noun has no literal gender. Furthermore, the declension of the noun, often determined by the spelling, can in turn be used to determine the gender, especially for the 1st and 2nd. However, this is never the case for the third declension, as the declension itself is not primarily assigned to any gender and the spelling of the nominative (“default”) stem is random, leaving you with no hints.

A noun and its adjective must also be in the same case. Otherwise, it is impossible to tell which nouns pair up to their respective adjectives in a sentence, as the words in a Latin sentence can appear in any order. See the examples below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notice how &quot;magna&quot; changes to &quot;magnae&quot; to agree with the pluralized &quot;puellae&quot;.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Latin</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puella (nominative sing., fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puella magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puellae (nominative pl., fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puellae magnae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notice how &quot;magna&quot; becomes &quot;magnus&quot; to agree with the masculine word &quot;servus&quot;. Also notice that &quot;magnus&quot; changes to &quot;magnum&quot; to agree with the noun it's describing in case, though do not concern yourself with the difference between cases for the time being.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Latin</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servus (nominative sing, mas.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servus magnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servum (accusative sing, mas.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servum magnum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notice that &quot;magna&quot; is feminine because &quot;arbor&quot; is feminine, despite that it does not end in &quot;a&quot; like &quot;puella&quot;. The word &quot;arbor&quot; is one of the situations where you will simply have to memorize the gender.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Latin</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbor (nominative sing, fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbor magna</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56.5 Recapitulation

- Declensions are used to categorize nouns in groups. There are 5 declensions total.
- Each of the five declensions has a distinct set of endings which are appended to nouns of that declension.
• The endings indicate the case and number when appended to the stem of a noun.
• A substantive may use only the endings of the declension of which it is a part.
• Each substantive has a predefined gender which almost never changes and is separate from the suffix.
• Adjectives are a part of the 1st/2nd declension and 3rd declension.
• Adjectives use the gender of the noun that they modify.

**Therefore:**

• An adjective of the 1st/2nd declension uses 1st declension endings when describing a feminine noun, a 2nd declension masculine ending when describing masculine noun, and 2nd declension neuter when describing a neuter noun.
• An adjective of the 3rd declension uses the same set of endings when describing masculine and feminine nouns and another set of endings when describing neuter nouns. (Actually, there are 3-termination, 2-termination, and 1-termination 3rd declension adjectives. If the adjective is 3-termination, e.g., acer (f. sing.), acris (m. sing.), acer (n. sing.), acres (f. pl.), acres (m. pl.), or acria (n. pl.), then use the appropriate ending; if the adjective is 2-termination, then one termination will be masculine/feminine and the other neuter; if the adjective is 1-termination, the common form is used.)

Before you proceed to the next lesson, complete the exercises below so you will be able to apply this knowledge to Latin.

**56.6 Exercises**

**Excercise: Questions**

1. What are the three genders?
2. What is the number (singular/plural) of the following English words:
   a) cow
   b) dogs
   c) genders
   d) adjective
   e) children
   f) slice
   g) mice
   h) geese
3. Describe the relationship between an adjective and the noun which it modifies.
4. How many declensions are there?
5. Determine the declension of each Latin word:
   - puella (girl)
   - ianua (door)
   - amicus (friend)
   - ludus (game)
   - casa (house)
   - rex (king)
6. What gender are 1st declension substantives mostly?
7. What genders are 2nd declension substantives mostly?
8. What grammatical features of a word that can be determined by looking at its ending?

Solution

1. Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter
2. What is the number (singular/plural) of the following English words:
   a) S
   b) P
   c) P
   d) S
   e) P
   f) S
   g) P
   h) P
3. The adjective takes on the case and gender (but not always the declension) of the noun it describes
4. Five
5. Determine the declension of each Latin word:
   a) 1st
   b) 1st
   c) 2nd
   d) 2nd
   e) 1st
   f) 3rd
6. Feminine
7. Masculine
8. It varies slightly from word-to-word; Declension/Case, Number, and sometimes Gender.
57 Exercises

57.1 Exercises

**Exercise:** Give the accusative singular.
Give the accusative singular for:

1. lud-us
2. magn-us
3. triclmi-um
4. bell-um
5. puell-a
6. serv-us
7. ager

**Solution**

1. ludum
2. magnum
3. triclinium
4. bellum
5. puellam
6. servum
7. agrum

**Exercise:** Give the accusative plural.
Give the accusative plural for:

1. lud-us
2. magn-us
3. triclmi-um
4. bell-um
5. puell-a
6. serv-us
7. ager

**Solution**

1. ludos
2. magnos
3. triclinia
4. bella
5. puellas
Exercises

6. servos
7. agros

Excercise: Give the nominative singular.
Give the nominative singular for:

1. bon-ī
2. bell-a
3. triclīmi-a
4. puell-am
5. agr-ōs
6. serv-ōs
7. puell-ae

Solution

1. bonus
2. bellum
3. triclinium
4. puella
5. ager
6. servus
7. puella

Lesson Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vendit</td>
<td>he/she sells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videt</td>
<td>he/she sees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>he/she loves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cist-a -ae (f.)</td>
<td>box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferox, ferocis (m/f.)</td>
<td>wild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ager (m.)</td>
<td>field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bell-um (m.)</td>
<td>war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serv-us (m.)</td>
<td>slave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

57.2 Grammar: The Accusative

As you learned in the last lesson, the verb 'esse' (to be) usually takes the nominative case, because then the word after it is a complement. Most other verbs take the 'accusative' case.

In a sentence, the accusative is the "what" - in English grammar, this is known as the direct object.

For example: The girl sells the box.

What did the girl sell? The box. Thus, box is the direct object, and when we translate it into Latin:
Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case

Example

*English:* The girl sells the box.
*Latin:* Puella vendit cistam.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ACCUSATIVE

Cistam, then, is in the accusative, because it is the direct object.

Again, when an adjective describes a noun in the accusative case, the adjective must agree in number, case, and gender.

Example

*English:* The girl sells the big box.
*Latin:* Puella vendit magnam cistam.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ADJECTIVE NOUN ACCUSATIVE

Because Latin uses cases to mark the subject and the object of a sentence, word order does not matter. Consider:

- puer puellam videt The boy sees the girl
- puerum puella videt The girl sees the boy
- puellam puer videt The boy sees the girl
- puella puerum videt The girl sees the boy

57.3 Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case
**Explanation** - The *good* boy loves the *wild* dog.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puer</td>
<td>[The] boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td><em>good</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>[he] loves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canem (acc)</td>
<td>[the] dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferocem (acc)</td>
<td><em>wild</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case

*Bonus*, a first and second declension adjective, is masculine, nominative, and singular to agree with *puer*, the word it is describing.

*Ferocem*, a third declension adjective, is masculine, accusative, and singular to agree with *canem*. *Canem* is accusative because it is the object of *amat*.

Here is an example of plural adjectives:
Exercises

The good boys love the wild dogs.

_Latin:_ Pueri (plur) **boni** (plur) amant (plur) canes (plur, acc) **feroces** (plur, acc).

_English:_ [The] boys **good** [they] love [the] dogs **wild**.
Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case

The words *bonus* and *ferocem* become *boni* and *feroces* to agree with the plurals *pueri* and *canes*.

However, if a girl (puella\(^1\)) happened to love that boy:

Exercises

Explanation- The *good* girl loves the *good* boy.

*Latin:* Puella *bona* amat puerum (acc) *bonum* (acc).

*English:* [The] girl *good* [she] loves [the] boy *good*.
Examples of Adjectives Agreeing with the Nominative and Accusative Case

*Bonus* must become *bona* in order to modify *puella*, which is feminine.

Finally, if the girl isn't good, but rather wild:
Exercises

Explanation

Latin: Puella ferox amat puerum (acc).

English: The girl wild she loves the boy good.
Even though *puella* is first declension, *ferox* remains third declension. In the same way, a good lion would be *bonus leo*.

### 57.4 Exercise 3

Determine whether the adjective agrees with the substantive in all three categories: case, gender, number.

**Questions:**

1. magn-us agr-ōs
2. magn-a puella
3. poet-a* bon-us
4. magn-um serv-um
5. poet-ae* magn-ae
6. bell-a magn-a

**Does it Agree?**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. magn-us agr-ōs</td>
<td>False</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. magn-a puella</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. poet-a* bon-us</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. magn-um serv-um</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. poet-ae* magn-ae</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. bell-a magn-a</td>
<td>True</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Nota bene: Poeta (meaning poet) is a masculine noun, even though it ends in -a.*

**Exercise: Answer**

See table above. Determine whether the adjective (magnus, bonus..) agrees with the substantives (ager, puella, poeta) in both case (nominative, accusative...), gender (masculine, female and neuter) and number (singular and plural).

**Solution**

1. **False.** *Magnus* doesn’t agree with *agriōs*; in number and case.
   - Magnus: Masculine, singular, nominative.
   - Agrōs: Masculine, plural, accusative.
2. **True.** *Magna* agrees with *puella*.
   - Magna: Feminine, singular, nominative.
   - Puella: Feminine, singular, nominative.
3. **True.** *Bonus* agrees with *poeta*.
   - Bonus: Masculine, singular, nominative.
   - Poeta: Masculine, singular, nominative.
4. **True.** *Magnum* agrees with *servum*.
   - Magnum: Neuter, singular, nominative.
   - Servum: Neuter, singular, nominative.
5. **False.** *Magnae* doesn’t agree with *poetae*; in gender.
   - Magnae: Feminine, plural, nominative.
   - Poetae: Masculine, plural, nominative.
6. **True.** *Bella* agrees with *magna*.
   - Bella: Neuter, plural, nominative.
   - Magna: Neuter, plural, nominative.

### 57.5 Grammar: The Use of the Accusative
The newly introduced verbs, ama-t, curri-t, and porta-t take the accusative as the 'object'. Unless specified, any verb you look up in the dictionary will take the accusative, not the nominative. This means that they are transitive verbs, verbs that happen to someone or something, e.g.:

I heal you. (acc.)
You make my day. (acc.)
She hit your arm. (acc.)

In the examples above, the bold words are the subject of the sentence clause. Because something happens 'to' them, they can't be in nominative.

57.6 Grammatical Explanation Using English Sentences

Grammatical Explanation 1

*English:* The boy hits the car.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ACCUSATIVE

Grammatical Explanation 2

*English:* The girl hugs the boy.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB ACCUSATIVE

Grammatical Explanation 3

*English:* He who flees, deserves the guillotine.

*Explanation:* NOMINATIVE VERB VERB ACCUSATIVE
57.6.1 Exercise 4: Find the Nominative and Accusative

**Exercise:** Find the Nominative and Accusative (if present) in each the sentence.

Find the Nominative and Accusative (if present) in each the sentence.

1. The boy is good.
2. The girl kisses the boy.
3. The boy gives the book.
4. The child watches the TV.
5. Whom it concerns.
6. To the kitchen I run
7. I eat the pizza.

**Solution**

1. The boy {nom} is good {nom}.
   *Puer {nom} est bonus {nom}.*
2. The girl {nom} kisses the boy {acc}.
   *Puella {nom} puerrum {acc} basiat.*
3. The boy {nom} gives the book {acc}.
   *Puer {nom} librum {acc} dat.*
4. The child {nom} watches the TV {acc}.
   *Infans {nom} televisorium {acc} videt.*
5. Whom {acc} it {nom} concerns.
   *???
6. To the kitchen {acc} I {nom} run.
   *Ad culinam {acc} [ego {nom}] curro.*
7. I {nom} eat the pizza {acc}.
   *Pittam {acc} [ego {nom}] edo.*

**Excercise:** In the following sentences, identify the accusative and nominative. Then translate.

In the following sentences, identify the accusative and nominative. Then translate.

1. Puer est bonus.
2. Puella puerrum amat.
3. Puer cistam portat.
4. Filius virum spectat.
5. Ad culinam currit.

**Solution**

1. The boy {nom} is good {nom}.
   *The boy {nom} is good {nom}.*
2. The girl {nom} loves the boy {acc}.
   *The girl {nom} loves the boy {acc}.*
3. The boy {nom} carries the box {acc}.
   *The boy {nom} carries the box {acc}.*
4. Filius {nom} virum {acc} spectat.
   The son {nom} watched the husband {acc}.
5. Ad culman {acc} currit.
   To the kitchen {acc} [he {nom}] runs.
58 Exercises

58.1 Noun Tables
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>1st declension</th>
<th>2nd declension</th>
<th>3rd declension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-us/er</td>
<td>-um (neuter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>puell-a</td>
<td>serv-us/puer</td>
<td>bell-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td>puell-ae</td>
<td>serv-i</td>
<td>bell-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>puell-āe</td>
<td>serv-ōrum</td>
<td>bell-ōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>puell-ām</td>
<td>serv-ōs</td>
<td>bell-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>puell-ae</td>
<td>serv-īs</td>
<td>bell-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
58.2 The Genitive

The genitive case is a descriptive case. The genitive case describes the following features of the described noun:

- Possession e.g. The Dog of Marcus or Marcus’s Dog (Canis Marcī)
- Origin e.g. Marcus of Rome (Marcus Romae
- Relation e.g. A thing of beauty (Rēs pulchrae)
- Quantity e.g. A gallon of water
- Quality e.g. Day of wrath (Dīēs irae)

Quite simply, a word in the genitive case is translated with the preposition "of". Note that Latin does not have a separate form for the possessive genitive (Marcus’s Dog vs The Dog of Marcus), as does English. A word in the genitive case showing possession can be translated either way.

58.2.1 Latin Examples
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>canis</td>
<td>of the bad boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mali</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjectives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dog of the bad boy is good.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>canis</td>
<td>The dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerorum</td>
<td>of the bad boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malorum</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive (plural)</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun</td>
<td>adj.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerorum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malorum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Latin Grammar Notes:**
- **canis**: nominative, noun
- **puerorum**: genitive, verb nominative (plural)
- **malorum**: genitive, verb nominative (plural)
- **est**: nominative, verb
- **bonus**: nominative, adj.
- **The dog of the bad boys is good**
58.2.2 Exercise 1

Indicate the word in the genitive:

1. Flavia’s dog is good.
2. The man has his mother’s good taste.
3. Māter Flaviae est domina.
4. The sword of justice is swift.

58.3 Agreeing with the Adjectives

When adjectives are used to describe nouns in the genitive case, they must have the same case, number, and gender as the noun to which it refers.

58.3.1 Example

A road of beautiful Rome → Via Romae pulchrae.

If we look at the bare necessities, namely nouns, in this phrase, then we get ‘road of Rome,’ which is translated as ‘via Romae.’ Now, let’s look at the adjective: beautiful (pulchra). Its antecedent (the noun it modifies) is Rome. Since Rome is in the genitive case, pulchra also needs to be in the genitive case. Both are already feminine, so we don’t need to change that.

To make pulchra in the genitive singular case, we replace the final ‘-a’ with a ‘-ae,’ and we get pulchrae.

It’s that simple.

58.4 The Dative

The dative case, also known as the indirect object case indicates:

• For whom, e.g., I made this car for him.
• To whom, e.g., I gave this car to him.

Latin does not distinguish between ‘to’ or ‘for’, though this is sometimes the case in English:

• I made this car for him. ↔ I made him this car.
• I gave this car to him. ↔ I gave him this car.

58.4.1 Example 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He</th>
<th>made</th>
<th>the desk</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>his friend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative noun</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>dative prep.</td>
<td>dative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
'For' is the preposition indicating a dative. 'For' can be used in some other constructs. To determine whether it is dative, analyse the meaning of the sentence (see Example 3). Practice will enable you to quickly spot the case of a noun in the sentence without much effort.

58.4.2 Example 2

*He gave the book to John,* *He gave to John the book;* or *He gave John the book.*

This demonstrates how English can use prepositions to change word order and even 'presume' a certain preposition exists that has been left out, giving a dative construct.

58.4.3 Latin Examples
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Donō</td>
<td>I gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amēō meō$^1$</td>
<td>my friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative noun/adj. pair</td>
<td>dative noun/adj. pair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Note how the word "meus" become "meo" in order to agree with 'amico'.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Feret</td>
<td>He brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihi²</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stylum.</td>
<td>a pen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the pronouns have a dative case as well, which can be reviewed in the chapter on pronouns.
58.5 Exercise 2: Translate into English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dō, dāre</td>
<td>to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reddō, reddēre</td>
<td>to give back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber, libri (m.)</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amīcus, -ī (m.)</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribō, -ēre</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>epistula, -ae (f.)</td>
<td>letter, message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperator, Imperatoris (m.)</td>
<td>Emperor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>placeo, -ēre (+dat.)</td>
<td>to please, be pleasing to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that *placeo* requires the dative case, as opposed to the accusative case. Verbs such as this are denoted with (+dat.) or similar abbreviations.

**Exercise: Questions**

1. Do librum amico.
2. Amicus meum librum legit et mihi librum reddit.
4. Meae epistulae Imperatori placent.

**Solution**

1. I give the book to a friend
2. The friend read my book and returned the book to me.
3. I am writing letters to the Emperor.
4. My letters are pleasing to the Emperor.

58.6 Roman Numerals

The Romans did not use the Hindu-Arabic numerals we use today. They used their own symbols and own numeric system. We still use Roman Numerals today.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman Numeral</th>
<th>Latin Numeral</th>
<th>English Number</th>
<th>Hindu-Arabic Numeral</th>
<th>Spanish Number</th>
<th>French Number</th>
<th>Italian Number</th>
<th>Portuguese Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>unus -a</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>uno</td>
<td>un</td>
<td>uno</td>
<td>um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>duo -ae</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>dos</td>
<td>deux</td>
<td>due</td>
<td>dois</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>tres, tria</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>trois</td>
<td>tre</td>
<td>três</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>quattor</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>cuatro</td>
<td>quatre</td>
<td>quattro</td>
<td>quatro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>quinque</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>cinco</td>
<td>cinq</td>
<td>cinque</td>
<td>cinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>seis</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>sei</td>
<td>seis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>septem</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>siete</td>
<td>sept</td>
<td>sette</td>
<td>sete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>octo</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ocho</td>
<td>huit</td>
<td>otto</td>
<td>oito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX</td>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>nueve</td>
<td>neuf</td>
<td>nape</td>
<td>nove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>diez</td>
<td>dix</td>
<td>dieci</td>
<td>dez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>quince</td>
<td>quinze</td>
<td>quindici</td>
<td>quinze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX</td>
<td>viginti</td>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>veinte</td>
<td>vingt</td>
<td>venti</td>
<td>vinte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXV</td>
<td>viginti, quinque</td>
<td>twenty-five</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>veinticinco</td>
<td>vingt-cinq</td>
<td>venticinque</td>
<td>vinte e cinco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>quinquagintia</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>cincuenta</td>
<td>cinquante</td>
<td>cinquanta</td>
<td>cinqienta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>cien</td>
<td>cent</td>
<td>cento</td>
<td>cem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>quingenti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>five hundred</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>quinhientos</td>
<td>cinq cents</td>
<td>cinque-cento</td>
<td>quinhentos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>mil</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note the declensions of the first three numbers. *Nullus* is the Latin equivalent of zero, for example: *nullam puellam in agro video* means *I see no girl in the field.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nullus</td>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>nullius</td>
<td>nulli</td>
<td>nullo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nulla</td>
<td>nullam</td>
<td>nullius</td>
<td>nulli</td>
<td>nulla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>nullum</td>
<td>nullius</td>
<td>nulli</td>
<td>nullo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unus</td>
<td>unum</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>uno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>una</td>
<td>unam</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>una</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unum</td>
<td>unum</td>
<td>unius</td>
<td>uni</td>
<td>uno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duos</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duas</td>
<td>duarum</td>
<td>duabus</td>
<td>duabus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duorum</td>
<td>duobus</td>
<td>duobus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tria</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**58.6.1 Exercise 3**

Write the word form of the numbers in the following sentences in the correct case.

1. **III** homines me salutant
2. magistro **II** libros reddo
3. D senatoribus multa (*many things*) dico
4. **III** horas diligenter laboro

Category:Latin

---

59 Translation

59.1 The Ablative Case

The ablative case in Latin has 4 main uses:

1. With certain prepositions, eg. in, cum, sub
2. Instrumental ablative, expressing the equivalent of English "by", "with" or "using"
3. Locative Ablative, using the ablative by itself to mean "in", locating an action in space or time
4. Ablative of separation or origin, expressing the equivalent of English "from"

The different uses of the ablative will be dealt progressively. For a summary of all forms of the ablative, please consult the Appendix.

59.2 Grammar Part 5: The Power of the Ablative Case

Ablative generally indicates position in time and/or space (i.e. when and where). It can also indicate the idea of ways of getting to a location, abstractly or concretely.

59.2.1 Ablative of Means

Exercise

How would you translate "I made the toga by hand"?

• **Hint:** You would not (and should not) use the genitive. The case you are studying right now can be used by itself for this goal.
• **Hint:** Remember that you won’t need to use the pronoun "I," since Latin is based not on word order, but on the endings!
• **Glossary:**
  "to make" - Facio ("I make"), facere ("to make"), feci ("I made"), factus ("made")
  "toga" - Toga, togae feminine
  "hand" - Manus, manus feminine (This is fourth declension)

Answer

Answer: Togam manu feci.

In this case, the word "manu" is in the ablative (see fourth declension list) and thus means "by hand."
Exercise

I have my wisdom by means of my teacher.

- 'Glossary:
  'wisdom' - Sapientia, sapientiae feminine
  'to have' - Habeo ("I have"), habere ("to have"), habui ("I had"), habitus ("had")
  'teacher' - Magister, magistri masculine (This is a second declension word, despite the 'r' at the end, like puer.)

Answer

Answer: Habeo sapientiam magistro.

59.2.2 Ablative of Time

How would you say: I will arrive at the 5th hour.

'at the 5th hour' is indicating position of time. Thus, it can be put into the ablative case, giving:

adveniam quinta hora

In general, therefore, in order to say 'In the morning', 'At nine O'clock,' or 'In the tenth year,' use ablative. It is generally used to refer to a specific time in which something has, does, or will occur.

Example: I will leave in the night.

Hint: Future tense can be looked up in the appendices of this Wikibook!

Hint: to leave- discedo, discedere; night- nox, noctis (This is a third declension word!)

Answer

Answer: Discedam nocte.

Note the simplicity in which Latin translates the six words into simply two. The ending based language completely negates the need for the words 'I,' 'will,' 'in,' and 'the.'

59.2.3 Ablative of Place

Naves navigabant mari. The ships were sailing on the sea.

The ablative is also useful for showing the location of things, in general where you would use the words on, in, or at. There is an exception for the slightly more archaic locative, which is used with the words domi (from domus, domus, f., home), ruri (from rus, ruris, n., country [as opposed to city]), and Romae (from Roma, Romae, f., Rome), as well as with the names of towns, cities and small islands.
Latin has its own way of handling prepositions depending on the nouns and their cases in the sentence, including the versatile *in*, which can take many different meanings depending upon the case of the object.

### 59.3 Ablative with prepositions

Here are a few prepositions that can take the ablative (for a fuller list, see the lesson on adverbs and prepositions in the previous chapter):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>in</em>&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>in, on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>a/ab</em></td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>de</em></td>
<td>down from, concerning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>e/ex</em></td>
<td>out of, out from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cum</em></td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sine</em></td>
<td>without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pro</em></td>
<td>on behalf of, in front of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>super</em>&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>upon, above, beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sub</em>&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>under, beneath</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As a general rule, when motion is implied, use the accusative, but when location is implied...

### 59.3.1 Example 3

*S ervus ex agris venit.*

"The slave came from the fields."

Note: *Ager* (*ager, agri, m.*, field) must take an ablative suffix to match the preceding preposition, in this case *e/ex*.

Incidentally, both *ager* and *campus* mean "field," but *ager*, like its English derivative "agriculture", connotes a farming field, while *campus* (think 'camping' or 'college campus') means 'open field.' The *Campus Martius* was a large field in Rome used for military training.

### 59.4 The Vocative Case

While you will rarely need to ask Lupus where the bathroom is in Latin, you may find yourself reading either quotes or letters in which a person is being directly addressed. The case it will be in is the vocative.

For example, "Hail, Augustus" will appear in Latin as *Ave Auguste*, and not *Ave Augustus*.

---

1. Means 'into' or 'against' when used with the accusative
2. Has static meaning when used with the ablative but connotes motion when used with the accusative
3. Usually means 'up to' or 'up to the foot of' when used with the accusative

261
Each declension has its own form of the vocative singular and plural. They are listed in the table below.

Furthermore, in all but the second declension, the nominative and vocative are exactly the same!
### The Vocative Case

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>i&gt;ae, ius&gt;es, r&gt;r</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifth</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

263
• In the second declension singular, there are three separate possibilities for the vocative, depending on its nominative ending. Hence, if it is a us word, it will become an e and so forth.

Examples for different declensions in the second declension

• -us:
  Lupus -> Lupe (given name, wolf)

• -ius:
  Filius -> Fili (son)
  Horatius -> Horati (given name)

• -r:
  Puer -> Puer (boy)

In all cases, the plural vocative is exactly the same as the plural nominative. This extends to those words which are neuter, which always have an 'a' for the nominative and vocative.

Examples

1. Hello, Sextus. (Hello = Salve)*
   Salve, Sexte.
2. Speak, girl! (Speak = dico, dicere, dixi)*
   Dic, puella.
3. Knee, run!* (Knee = genu; run = curro, currere, cucurri)*
   Genu, curre!
4. Oh, heart, why do you lead me? (Oh-o; heart- cor, coris-f.; lead-duco, ducere;
   O, cor! Cur ducis tu me?

• Note that the first three also require use of the imperative. The imperative is used when ordering or telling someone what to do, e.g.- "Stop," or "Get away from me."

The basic form of the imperative is created by dropping the 're' off of the infinitive form of the verb, as in: Amare, which becomes Ama; at least in the singular active form, which is all that these exercises require. More can be found about this subject in the chapter on verbs.
60 Revision

60.1 Personal Pronouns in English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson Vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Latin</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laborat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronouns are nouns which are used instead of another noun ('pro', in place of 'noun', noun.)

There are three categories of pronouns which are divided up into persons: 1st, 2nd, and 3rd. In addition, pronouns can be singular or plural. They are declined like all other nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>We</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>You, Thou</td>
<td>You (all)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60.2 Personal Pronouns in Latin

60.2.1 1st/2nd Person Pronouns

Table of Personal Pronouns in all of their cases: I, thou, we, ye

Note: Thou is the archaic singular of the archaic plural ye - useful for distinguishing you (singular) from you (plural)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nomina-</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>tā</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Geni-</strong></td>
<td><strong>meī</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>tuī</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tive</strong></td>
<td><strong>of me</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>of you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dative</strong></td>
<td><strong>mihi</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>tibi</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>to me</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>to/for you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Accu-</strong></td>
<td><strong>mē</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>tē</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sative</strong></td>
<td><strong>me</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abla-</strong></td>
<td><strong>mē</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>tē</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tive</strong></td>
<td><strong>from me</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>from you</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nota Bene: the genitive is used in certain phrases like:

1. memor nostrī, mindful of us
2. paucī vestrum, a few of you.

For the possessive uses (my sister, your bicycle), Latin does not use the genitive, but the possessive adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meus, mea, meum</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuus, tua, tuum</td>
<td>thy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suus, sua, sum</td>
<td>his/hers, its, their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noster, nostra, nostrum</td>
<td>our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vester, vestra, vestrum</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pater noster</td>
<td>Our father</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 60.2.2 3rd Person Pronouns

Technically, 3rd person pronouns do not exist in Latin as they do in English. However, they do have equivalents.

Adjectives modify nouns and take the gender of the noun which they modify. However, adjectives do not necessarily need a substantive present in the sentence to modify. The substantive can be presumed. In this way, '3rd person' pronouns are formed.

**Example 1**

Take the masculine form of the adjective 'ille'. Literally it means 'That (masculine) thing.' However one could take it for simply meaning 'he', depending on the context. Similarly, the pronoun 'iste' means 'this (masc.) thing'. Iste and ille are declined in exactly the same way.

If no substantive is provided assume words like these: 'man', 'woman', 'thing', 'idea', 'concept', 'reason' etc. Let context be your guide.

### 60.2.3 Common Adjectives Used as 3rd Person Pronouns In Latin

Declension of Ille (that)
## Declension of *ille* (that): Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>illus</td>
<td>illas</td>
<td>illus</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>her, hers</td>
<td>its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>to him</td>
<td>to her</td>
<td>to it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>by, with, from him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illae</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>they, those</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
<td>illārum</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
<td>their, theirs, of those</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>to them, to those</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>them, those</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>by, with, from them, those</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ille is often used as a kind of pronoun. In situations with multiple phrases or sentences, however, it is syntactically different from is, ea, id (see below).

For example: "Canis puero cibum dat. Is laborat in agro." means "The dog gives food to the boy. The dog works in the field".

However: "Canis puero cibum dat. Ille laborat in agro." means "The dog gives food to the boy. The boy works in the field".

Thus, ille, unlike the other pronouns makes a previous object into the subject (and vice versa).

**Examples of the Usage of Ille:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ille est dominus.</td>
<td>He is the master. (ille as pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ille dominus est malus.</td>
<td>That master is bad. (ille as adjective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illam videt</td>
<td>He sees her. (or 'she sees her' - illam as pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illam puellam videt</td>
<td>He (or she) sees that girl (illam as adjective).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Declension of Is, ea, id: (personal pronouns w/ translations)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>to him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eae</td>
<td>eae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>they, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eārum</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>their, theirs, of those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>eis, iis</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to them, to those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eās</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>them, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>eis, iis</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by, with, from them, those</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Like ille, is can be used as a form of a pronoun.

**Examples of the Usage of Is**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is est dominus.</td>
<td>He is the master. (<em>is</em> as pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is dominus est malus.</td>
<td>That master is bad. (<em>is</em> as adjective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eam videt.</td>
<td>He sees her. (or 'she sees her', <em>eam</em> as pronoun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eam puellam videt.</td>
<td>He (or she) sees that girl. (<em>eam</em> as adjective)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Declension of the Relative pronoun qui, quae, quod: (meaning who, which, he)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>who</td>
<td></td>
<td>which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>cuītus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>whose</td>
<td></td>
<td>of which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to whom</td>
<td>to which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>whom</td>
<td></td>
<td>which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>by, with, from whom, which</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>quorum</td>
<td>quarum</td>
<td>quorum</td>
<td>whose</td>
<td>of which</td>
<td>whose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quarum</td>
<td>quorum</td>
<td>to whom</td>
<td>to which</td>
<td>to whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>quos</td>
<td>quas</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>whom</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>quas</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>by, with, from whom, which</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notice that the same forms are used to ask a question, with the following exceptions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
<td>who, which, what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>whom, which, what</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Uses of the Relative Pronoun**

The relative pronoun takes on the case depending on the function it serves in the relative clause. For example, in the sentence "He sees the man who has a slave," "who" is translated as nominative because it is the subject of the clause "who has a slave." The antecedent (noun to which the pronoun refers) is usually before the relative clause.

**Examples of the Usage of the Relative Pronoun**

1. *Virum videt*¹ (he/she sees) *qui servum*² (servant) *habet*³ (he/she has).
   He sees the man *who* has a slave
2. *Ille est vir*⁴ *cujus servus est malus*⁵.
   That's the man whose slave is bad.
3. *Quis *eum*⁶ *videt*?
   Who sees *him*?

**Declension of hic, haec, hoc (meaning this)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>lae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercises

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>bōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B. Hic as an adverb that means 'here'. N.B. Hic can also be used as a pronoun.

#### Example of the Usage of Hic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hic servus, non ille, est malus.</td>
<td>This slave, not that one, is bad.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 60.3 Exercises

Give a suitable LATIN translation for the following:

1. To him
2. To her
3. For her
4. For him
5. To it
6. I
7. You
8. Ye
9. of You
10. of him
11. We
12. Thou
13. of thee
14. in him
15. in her

Give a suitable ENGLISH translation for the following:

1. Meus
2. Meī
3. Ille
4. Illud
5. Huic
6. Hī
7. Hoc
8. Nōs
9. Nostrī
10. Vōs
11. Vestrum

Category:Latin

---

7 [http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin)
61 Poem about Latin

Latin is a language,
At least it used to be;
It killed the Ancient Romans,
And now it's killing me.
(Iambic Trimeter)
It killed Julius Caesar
And killed those who learned it.
Bless the dead!
They surely earned it.
(Anapestic Dimeter)
Category:Latin

http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Category%3ALatin
# 62 Contributors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Edits</th>
<th>User</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>AdRiley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Adrignola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Alexius08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>AllenZh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Alsocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>AmieKim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>AndrewNJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Andy85719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Arcos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Arthurvogel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Asv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Avicennasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Aya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Belteshazzar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Benjamiong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>BiT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>C.m.brandenburg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Cameron789787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Chiyo no saru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Chrisbehrens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Crusadeonilliteracy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises

4 GordonWillis
2 Greenbreen
19 Guanabot
2 Gzur
2 H.m.twink
2 Hagindaz
2 Herbythyme
2 Herr Beethoven
89 Hieronymous
2 Iamunknown
1 Ianep
1 J36miles
2 Jameshfisher
3 JenVan
13 Jerryproffitt
2 JesusAddict
22 Jfmantis
117 Jguk
2 JohnWheater
14 Jomegat
3 Jondel
4 Jonel
37 Karl Wick
4 Kongen
24 Kpjas

1 Ktr10172
1 LDV73
1 Laurascudder74
5 Lyndona675
1 M.McCarty76
1 Mark Lewis77
6 MichaelFrey78
2 Mlloyd5779
17 Nsoyeblcyha80
1 Orthopteran81
2 Peterjenkins82
1 Pjrich83
2 Ponpan84
6 Profquad85
5 QuiteUnusual86
2 RMFan187
2 Ravichandar8488
2 Rebbiejaye89
15 Recent Runes90
1 Refusingtогiveup91
7 Relike86892
2 Reyk93
2 Reywas9294
4 Robert.Baruch95
2 Sabbut96
Exercises

2 Samuel.sigaud
1 Sbauman487
2 Sean Antrim
2 Sharkey
2 Shax
3 SimRPGman
1 Shuffs
4 Sna
2 Smkatz
2 Snipsnap
1 Soap
3 Spiked
4 Storeye
17 Swfarnsworth
3 Talkingdrumm
1 Thenub314
1 Think Fast
2 Thomasina123
2 Timeroot
1 Tmdhyun08
1 UNIT A4B1
2 Ugen64
12 Uly
49 Undotwa
1 Van der Hoorn


285
7 Vbuterin
122 Vubb
1 Webaware
1 Wmcscrooge
1 Wyverald
3 XN73Q
7 Xania
1 YMS
1 Yann
4 Zoid

List of Figures

- cc-by-sa-3.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 3.0 License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/
- cc-by-sa-2.5: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 2.5 License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/
- cc-by-sa-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 2.0 License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/
- cc-by-sa-1.0: Creative Commons Attribution ShareAlike 1.0 License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/1.0/
- cc-by-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/
- cc-by-2.0: Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en
- cc-by-2.5: Creative Commons Attribution 2.5 License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5/deed.en
- cc-by-3.0: Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 License. http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/deed.en
- PD: This image is in the public domain.
- ATTR: The copyright holder of this file allows anyone to use it for any purpose, provided that the copyright holder is properly attributed. Redistribution, derivative work, commercial use, and all other use is permitted.
- EURO: This is the common (reverse) face of a euro coin. The copyright on the design of the common face of the euro coins belongs to the European Commission. Authorised is reproduction in a format without relief (drawings, paintings, films) provided they are not detrimental to the image of the euro.
- CFR: Copyright free use.

Copies of the GPL, the LGPL as well as a GFDL are included in chapter Licenses\textsuperscript{132}. Please note that images in the public domain do not require attribution. You may click on the image numbers in the following table to open the webpage of the images in your webbrowser.

\textsuperscript{132} Chapter 63 on page 291
The GNU General Public License is a free, copyleft license for software and other kinds of works.

The licenses for most software and other practical works are designed to be broad, permissive, and unrestrictive; that is, to act in the best interests of wilful users. The GNU General Public License applies to most of such works. This license, the least permissive of the GPL family, applies to the GNU libraries.

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

The GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change the software. There are two kinds of free software patents cannot be used to render the program non-free.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. TERMS AND CONDITIONS.

0. Definitions.

"Copyright" also means copyright-like laws that apply

"License" or "Licence" refers to this document, the GNU General Public License.

"Licensee" means anyone who is granted a license by

"Modular Corresponding Source" means machine-readable correspondingly licensed.

"Object code" means any non-source form of a work including "binary code" and "machine executable code".

"Source code" means the preferred form of the work for making modifications.

"Work" means a copyrightable work available under the terms and conditions of this License.

"考核" means the act of signing a document.

"Recipient" means anyone who receives a copy of the "Licensee".

"Licensee's Legal Rights" from Anti-

"Licensee's Legal Rights" from Anti-
Free" in the sense of freedom: to assure everyone the opportunity to enjoy a free program, regardless of what they can and cannot do with it.

A "Modified Version" of the Document means any work containing the Document or a portion of it, either copied verbatim, translated, adapted, modified, or extended, or published as an integral part of a larger electronic or paper work, that preserves the unmodified exact content and structure of the Document, except for changes of spelling, punctuation, layout, or formatting. This License applies to any manual or other work containing the Document or a portion of it, even if you did not receive a copy like this one.

You are not required to accept this License; in particular, no one has made any promise that you must accept it. Merely receiving a copy of the Document gives you no rights under this License. You may accept it or decline it. A person who has received a copy has no obligation to accept it. Whether you accept this License or decline it, you must read it carefully.

The "License" means this document. A "Work" means any academic or industrial work containing the Document or a portion of it, whether or not it is bound in a book.

A "free" work, or "free software," means a work that gives everyone the opportunity to view, copy, modify, and distribute it free of charge and under the terms of this License. Such a work can be distributed on a freedu copy with or without modifications; it can be distributed in any medium for any purpose.

A "free copy" of the Document means a copy you are entitled to modify or distribute under the terms of this License. A "free program" is a free work that is distributed in source code as well as in object code, under the terms of this License. "Free software" means the freedom toTL

An "entity" is a transaction transferring the rights to use, reproduce, modify, and distribute the Document or a portion of it. An "entity" may be an individual or a legal entity. "License" means this document.

This License is a kind of "copyleft," which means that derivative works of the Document may only be copied, modified, or distributed if you do so for free and under the terms of this License. Even more specifically: you must give away all your rights to do anything with your version of the Document if anyone else would be thereby deprived of any of the rights you have; or else, if not, you must give everyone else your rights.

This License is intended to make open-source software available to all on terms that ensure that the software is free for all users.

The "patent" means any patent license, trademark license, or other similar right under a patent right.

The "corresponding source" means, in addition to the source code, the specific development tools, scripts, symbolic debuggers, etc. which are used to create and test the executable code.

You may copy and distribute the Work (or a modification or translation thereof) under the terms of this License, or any later version, or such modification or translation, under the terms of the earlier version or any earlier version, provided that you also distribute the unmodified version of the Work under the terms of this License.

A "derivative work" means any work based directly on a Document, such as translation, adaptation, or a derivative of the Document, or any work containing a substantial portion of the original work, material from which it is derived.

A "Secondary Section" is a section that is not an Invariant Section, but which contains "Invariant" materials. This License applies to any manual or other work containing the Document or a portion of it, even if you included a copy like this one. You have the same rights to copy, modify, and distribute the Work as those who published the Document, who also authorized you to copy, modify, and distribute those parts of the Work.

You may make a "modified version" of the Document or any other work, or modify the Document or any other work, if you first acquired a modified version of it and if your modified version includes the entire original Work, unmodified except for those derivatives and additions. You may make a "combination" of the Document with other works or documents, or add your own work to the Document, if you first acquired the Document and the other works and documents under this License, or under license terms designed to allow further free distribution of such combination or work or document.

A "Corresponding Source" means the source code for the program including its shebang line, copyright notices, licensing notices and terms, and the documentation mentioned by the License. The "Corresponding Source" must be in the same media as the Corresponding Binary, if they are distributed on the same medium. If you distribute the Corresponding Source, you must retain on it all the copyright notices, terms, and disclaimers stated in this section.

If you publish printed copies (or copies in media traditionally used for printing) of the Document, you must include the complete(C) Copyright <Year> <Author>, except as otherwise stated in this License. This License is intended to make open-source software available to all on terms that ensure that the software is free for all users.

The "Licensor" means the copyright owner of the Document, or any person authorized to license the Document by the copyright owner.

The "Corresponding Source" means, in addition to the source code, the specific development tools, scripts, symbolic debuggers, etc. which are used to create and test the executable code.

You may create a "Modified Version" of the Document or any other work, or modify the Document or any other work, if you first acquired a modified version of it and if your modified version includes the entire original Work, unmodified except for those derivatives and additions.

You may copy and distribute the Work (or a modification or translation thereof) under the terms of this License, or any later version, or such modification or translation, under the terms of the earlier version or any earlier version, provided that you also distribute the unmodified version of the Document under the terms of this License.

You may also add links, under the same condi-

To ensure that people know what you've done with the Document, we recommend using a header of the form "Free software; Copyright (c) 2000 ... Distributed under the terms of the GNU General Public License, version 2 (GPLv2), which is a copyleft license that ensures that any derivative work is also free software.

The "License" means this document. A "Work" means any academic or industrial work containing the Document or a portion of it, whether or not it is bound in a book.

A "free" work, or "free software," means a work that gives everyone the opportunity to view, copy, modify, and distribute it free of charge and under the terms of this License. Such a work can be distributed on a freedu copy with or without modifications; it can be distributed in any medium for any purpose.

A "free copy" of the Document means a copy you are entitled to modify or distribute under the terms of this License. A "free program" is a free work that is distributed in source code as well as in object code, under the terms of this License. "Free software" means the freedom toTL

An "entity" is a transaction transferring the rights to use, reproduce, modify, and distribute the Document or a portion of it. An "entity" may be an individual or a legal entity. "License" means this document.

This License is a kind of "copyleft," which means that derivative works of the Document may only be copied, modified, or distributed if you do so for free and under the terms of this License. Even more specifically: you must give away all your rights to do anything with your version of the Document if anyone else would be thereby deprived of any of the rights you have; or else, if not, you must give everyone else your rights.

This License is intended to make open-source software available to all on terms that ensure that the software is free for all users.

The "patent" means any patent license, trademark license, or other similar right under a patent right.

The "corresponding source" means, in addition to the source code, the specific development tools, scripts, symbolic debuggers, etc. which are used to create and test the executable code.

You may copy and distribute the Work (or a modification or translation thereof) under the terms of this License, or any later version, or such modification or translation, under the terms of the earlier version or any earlier version, provided that you also distribute the unmodified version of the Document under the terms of this License.

A "derivative work" means any work based directly on a Document, such as translation, adaptation, or a derivative of the Document, or any work containing a substantial portion of the original work, material from which it is derived.

A "Secondary Section" is a section that is not an Invariant Section, but which contains "Invariant" materials.

You may make a "modified version" of the Document or any other work, or modify the Document or any other work, if you first acquired a modified version of it and if your modified version includes the entire original Work, unmodified except for those derivatives and additions.
Linked Version. GNU GPL refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License. A "Combined Work" is a work produced by combining the Document with other separate and independent works, forming one work in which the Combine Work as defined below.

The "Minimal Corresponding Source" for a Combined Work means the combination of the Combined Work with any linked versions of libraries that the Combined Work requires in order to run, as specified by the terms of the Combined Work's license notice. The "Original Author(s)" of a Document means all authors of that Document. If the Document specifies that "you may redistribute or modify a Modified Version under the terms of one of the relevant versions of ANY later version that applies to the object code or source code form of the Combined Work as stated in the previous paragraph, then you may also redistribute

The "Author" means the individual or entity that contains the library notice at a location specified by using an interface provided by the Library.

You may add a section Entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", Preserves the Title of the section, and preserves in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements in and/or dedications given therein. L. Preserve all links from the Document to other documents (including those embedded within images of, or interlaced with, the Document).

You may make a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided that you include in the collection a copy of the License, and this notice with a suitable link to the original version of this License. If the Document contains a " GPL" notice, you may use the text of the notice on the Document itself if the Document is also covered by this License, provided that you include the notice as required by this License.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. A "Cover Text" means an适度, a "Minimal Corresponding Source" for a Combined Work means the combination of the Combined Work with any linked versions of libraries that the Combined Work requires in order to run, as specified by the terms of the Combined Work's license notice. The "Original Author(s)" of a Document means all authors of that Document. If the Document specifies that "you may redistribute or modify a Modified Version under the terms of one of the relevant versions of ANY later version that applies to the object code or source code form of the Combined Work as stated in the previous paragraph, then you may also redistribute

The "Author" means the individual or entity that contains the library notice at a location specified by using an interface provided by the Library.

You may add a section Entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", Preserves the Title of the section, and preserves in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements in and/or dedications given therein. L. Preserve all links from the Document to other documents (including those embedded within images of, or interlaced with, the Document).

You may make a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided that you include in the collection a copy of the License, and this notice with a suitable link to the original version of this License. If the Document contains a "GPL" notice, you may use the text of the notice on the Document itself if the Document is also covered by this License, provided that you include the notice as required by this License.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. A "Cover Text" means an

Copyright (C) YEAR YOUR NAME. Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License Version 3.0, published by the Free Software Foundation.


If you distribute a complete copy of a Combined Work under terms of this License, then you must also provide an uncombined version of it.

If you distribute the object code form of a Combined Work under the terms of this License, you must also make the source code for that object code available under the terms of this License, as described in section 4 above. If you distribute the source code for a Combined Work under the terms of this License, the parts you add must conform to the object code form of the Combined Work.

If you distribute the source code for a Combined Work under the terms of this License, the parts you add must conform to the object code form of the Combined Work.

If you distribute a work that contains part of this License notice and you alter or remove the notice on the Document, you must add an additional notice as per section 3. You may add a section Entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", Preserves the Title of the section, and preserves in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements in and/or dedications given therein. L. Preserve all links from the Document to other documents (including those embedded within images of, or interlaced with, the Document).

You may make a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided that you include in the collection a copy of the License, and this notice with a suitable link to the original version of this License. If the Document contains a "GPL" notice, you may use the text of the notice on the Document itself if the Document is also covered by this License, provided that you include the notice as required by this License.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. A "Cover Text" means an

Copyright (C) YEAR YOUR NAME. Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License Version 3.0, published by the Free Software Foundation.


If you distribute a complete copy of a Combined Work under terms of this License, then you must also provide an uncombined version of it.

If you distribute the object code form of a Combined Work under the terms of this License, you must also make the source code for that object code available under the terms of this License, as described in section 4 above. If you distribute the source code for a Combined Work under the terms of this License, the parts you add must conform to the object code form of the Combined Work.

If you distribute the source code for a Combined Work under the terms of this License, the parts you add must conform to the object code form of the Combined Work.

If you distribute a work that contains part of this License notice and you alter or remove the notice on the Document, you must add an additional notice as per section 3. You may add a section Entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", Preserves the Title of the section, and preserves in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements in and/or dedications given therein. L. Preserve all links from the Document to other documents (including those embedded within images of, or interlaced with, the Document).

You may make a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided that you include in the collection a copy of the License, and this notice with a suitable link to the original version of this License. If the Document contains a "GPL" notice, you may use the text of the notice on the Document itself if the Document is also covered by this License, provided that you include the notice as required by this License.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. A "Cover Text" means an